

The Diary
of
"William Knox"

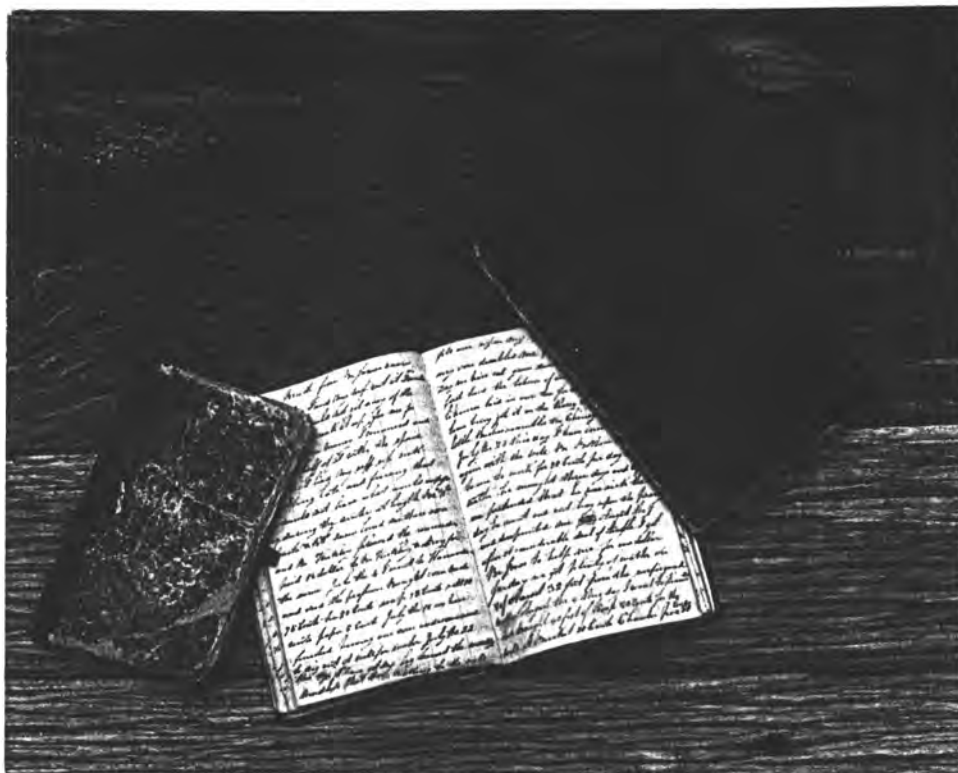
Reproduced by Dorothy Bryson,
Great, Great Granddaughter of
William Knox and Elizabeth
Tweddell Knox



WILLIAM KNOX

Born - 5 July 1815
 Spittal (Near Berwick) England
Married - Elizabeth Tweddell - Catherine Tearn
 1 Aug. 1842 18 Jan. 1855
Died - 22 Feb. 1891 - 75 years
 Salt Lake City, Utah

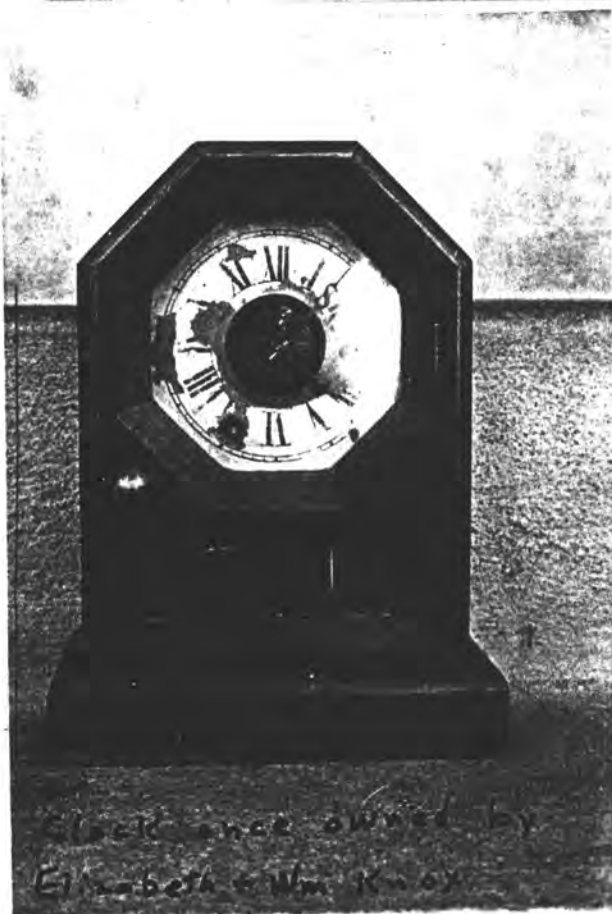
5' 9" tall - weight 160 lbs.



THE DIARY OF WILLIAM KNOX

Left to right Books 4,3,2

In possession of Rodger Peart
in Randolph, Utah



This clock belonged to
William and Elizabeth.

On December 15, 1855,
3 months after he arrived
in Salt Lake, William writes
in his diary that he made
a stand for the clock he
bought on the 13th.

He says he paid \$12.00 for
the clock and that it would
have cost \$5.00 in St. Louis.

This is probably that clock.
It is in the possession of
Sally Peart Eastman in
St. George, Utah

WILLIAM KNOX

William was born July 5, 1815 at Spittal, near Berwick, England. He was four years older than Elizabeth who was born June 15, 1819 at Durham, Eng. They were married on August 1, 1842 when William was 27 and Elizabeth was 23. One year later they both joined the Mormon Church.

William was baptized in a river near Hylton, England by John Fraser on Aug. 15, 1843. Elizabeth Tweddell Knox was baptized in a cistern in the Dawson Pottery on Oct. 12, 1843 by John Barker. She was confirmed by John Barker in her own home. (This information comes from records of the Sunderland Branch, film 086990 in the Family History Library in Salt Lake)

William tells of being weighed while yet in Hylton. He weighed 160 lbs and was 5'9" tall.

Five and a half years after their baptism, they set sail for the United States and Zion. They left Liverpool on March 9, 1849 and arrived at New Orleans on April 28, 1849. They had been on the ocean 50 days. They came on the Hartley.

From New Orleans, they took a steam-boat up the Mississippi to Saint Louis where they arrived on May 12, 1849.

In May of 1850, they sailed up the river to Council Bluff where William bought a house and acre of land for \$11.00. Times were hard in Council Bluff and, exactly one day from the day they arrived, they gave up and went back to Saint Louis. There had been much sickness in Council Bluff and very little food.

In February of 1855, Brother Nisonger asked William to go to the Merimac River and haul wood in the hope they both would make enough money to go to the Great Salt Lake Valley. On April 19, 1855, they left this area headed for Zion. William didn't have enough money but was encouraged by Apostle Erastus Snow to go and trust in the Lord. On September 3, 1855, they arrived in Salt Lake.

William and Elizabeth had three children when they left Hylton, England -- Elizabeth 6, Dorothy 3½, Peter 2. Elizabeth died on the Steamer coming up the Mississippi River. She first got the Whooping Cough. Cholera was taking the lives of many of the passengers so that may have been the final cause of Elizabeth's death. Peter died in Saint Louis two months after they arrived. He died of Cholera. Dorothy lived to rear a family in Randolph, Utah.

Elizabeth Jane was born in Council Bluff in 1850. She lived to adulthood and married a man named Silvester Lowe. Emma Josephine was born and died in Saint Louis, age 2. Mary Ann was born while William was working on the Merimac River. She became the polygamist wife of John Corless who had first married her sister, Dorothy. Mary Ann reared a large family in Randolph, Utah. William and Thomas were born in Salt Lake. Thomas lived until 1935. I do not know about William. There were 8 children in all.

William and his polygamist wife, Catherine Tearn were married on Jan. 18, 1855. They had 10 children. Catherine came into the Salt Lake Valley with a handcart company. She was born 25 December 1840, the daughter of William Tearn of Ferryhill, England. He died soon after reaching Salt Lake.

Peter, Catherine's first child, died young and is buried in the Salt Lake Cemetery next to his parents. John, Sarah Ann, Catherine, Helen, Matilda, Mary and James all lived to adulthood and married. I don't know about Eleanor and Hannah. All of these 10 children were born in Utah.

William was a very religious man. Most of his diary has to do with his faith and work within the Church. In England he walked, almost daily, from Hylton to Sunderland (4 miles to and 4 miles back) where he stood in the Arcade and preached to the people. He was Branch President of the Sunderland Branch and was very much involved in Church meetings and other activities. All of this after a day of hard work.

On several occasions he tells of going through the town, ringing a bell and crying to the people to attend his lectures. He loved to preach the gospel. After coming to Salt Lake, he loved to listen to such men as Brigham Young and Heber C. Kimball. He was dedicated to following their advice.

William's wives did not always get along. In 1860, he moves to Logan in hopes of being a farmer. That did not turn out so he returned to Salt Lake. His first wife, Elizabeth, who had been through so much with him, stayed in Logan. She was buried in the Smithfield Cemetery.

In England, William worked at the ship-yard and also at a Pottery. In the United States he took any kind of odd-job he could get, mostly carpenter work. His first years in the United States were hard. He was ill a lot of the time and the family was often in a starving situation. Times were hard in Salt Lake, especially at first when food was so scarce. By 1860, he seems to be quite a bit better-off.

William was very opinionated, a trait some of us got. At first, he seemed like a whinner, but I got to like him. Brigham Young told the Bishop that he, Brigham Young, wouldn't have any trouble getting along with William Knox. William and the Bishop Winter did not get along. Finally the Bishop was released.

All together William had 18 children. Four died young -- Elizabeth, Peter, Emma Josephine and Peter. (There were two named Elizabeth and 2 named Peter) William doesn't tell us a lot about the illness of his family. I don't think people lived too long after getting Cholera.

William died and was buried in Salt Lake. I know nothing of his life after the diary ends. There must be more information in Catherine's family but I have been unable to contact but two of them. Both, of whom I contacted were descended from John Knox. Because John had disappeared and left there grandmother, Agnes Roper, his family wanted no part of the Knox family and history.

SOME INFORMATION ABOUT THE DIARY

Three of the books which William Knox kept are in the possession of Roger Peart in Randolph. He let me take the books for a number of months during which time I typed from the original handwriting in the diary. I really appreciate Roger doing this as he could have kept them away from other family members so that we would never have had this information.

The Church Historian's Office in Salt Lake reproduced a copy of the entire original three books. I appreciate this. They now have a copy and I also have a copy of the original. I would be happy to make a copy, from my copy, for anyone who wants to pay the cost involved.

William's handwriting is quite legible but he does not punctuate at all and his spelling is unbelievable. I spelled the words the way he had. It took a lot of effort to get an accurate typed copy. I am sure there are some mistakes, but hope not many. As you read, please keep in mind that the spelling is William's, not mine.

The woman at the Family History Library in Salt Lake said that historians feel this is the best diary the church has found in 20 years.

Book #1 is missing. The only way I know there is a Book #1 is that William mentions it as he starts Book #2. Also, Book #5 is missing. It was in the hands of Vera Peart at one time but someone borrowed it and never returned it. She couldn't remember who. However, Willard and Vera Peart had paid to have Book #5 reproduced in type so we have that typed copy.

The information we have, ends in January 1864. William didn't die until 1894. It seems almost certain that he would have continued keeping a record. Probably what he wrote after 1864 is in the family of his polygamist wife, Catherine. It was at this time that William and Catherine moved back to Salt Lake from Logan and his first wife, Elizabeth, remained in Logan.

The two members of Catherine's family who I found, did not want anything to do with the Knox family. William's son, John, was their grandfather. He was married to Agnes Roper and their story was that John had run off and left Agnes, never to return or even let the family know his whereabouts. The husband of one of the women told me, out of ear-shot of his wife, that John was working at the mine in Park City. He said it was his belief that John was murdered at the mine by some of the rough element working there at that time.

On February 22, 1848, William Knox says that his Little Flock in Sunderland, England, numbered 49. On June 18, 1848, that number had grown to 54. From Sunderland records, film #485343 at the Family History Library in Salt Lake, we find the following names baptized and confirmed by William Knox:

John Petrie - May 30, 1846	_____ Whitaker - April 3, 1848
George Stabler - May 30, 1846	Mary ? - June 26, 1848
Elizabeth Bur ? - Aug. 29, 1847	Hannah Morrison - Oct 7, 1848
Mary Ann Gurney - Sept. 25, 1847	John Pollard - Oct. 7, 1848
Robert Maddison - Sept. 25, 1847	Thomas Sowell - Sept. 5, 1848
W. Harker - Sept. 15, 1847	Charles Pollard - Sept. 2, 1848
Wm Hasokay - Nov. 30, 1847	John Luffeth - Feb. 13, 1849
Harry Lithering - Dec. 5, 1847	
Esker Whitker - Dec. 5, 1847	
Elizabeth Whitaker - Dec. 5, 1847	
? Dale - Dec. 27, 1847	
Elizabeth Collingwood - Dec. 25, 1847	
Charles Collingwood - Jan. 19, 1848	
Margaret Collingwood - Jan. 19, 1848	
John Bowman - Jan. 2, 1848	
Elizabeth Dale - Jan. 2, 1848	
Thomas Mead - Jan. 10, 1848	
Witaker - Apr. 3, 1848	

(BAPTIZED IN HENDON BAY)

Throughout William's diary he mentions many more whom he baptized.

WILLIAM KNOX

B. 5 July 1815 at Spittal, near Berwick, England
M. Elizabeth Tweddell August 1, 1842
D. 22 Feb. 1891 in Salt Lake City, buried in S.L.

ELIZABETH TWEDDELL

B. 15 June, 1819 at Durham, Durham Co. Eng.
D. 29 Sept. in Smithfield, Utah
buried in Smithfield

Children

1. Elizabeth
B. 15 Oct. 1843, Hylton, England
Died on steamer coming up Mississippi River from New Orleans to St. Louis. She came down with whooping cough on April 15 and died on May 9. Cholera was taking the lives of many on the steamer so she may have died of Cholera.
2. Dorothy
B. 22 Sept., 1845, Hylton, England
M. John Corless Feb. 11, 1862, Salt Lake City
D. 29 Dec. 1926, Randolph, Utah
3. Peter
B. 14 Jan., 1847, Hylton, England
D. 18 July, 1849, St. Louis, Mo. of Cholera
4. Elizabeth Jane
B. 3 Sept. 1850, Council Bluffs, Iowa
Lived to adulthood and married Silvester Lowe
5. Emma Josephine
B. 18 Dec. 1852, St. Louis, Mo.
D. 22 Aug. 1854, St. Louis, Mo.
buried in Methodist cemetery
6. Mary Ann (known as "Polly")
B. 9 April 1855 (William Knox was working on the Merimac River near St. Louis)
Became the polygamist wife of John Corless who was also married to Mary's sister, Dorothy
D. 29 July 1931, Randolph, Utah
7. William Knox
B. 13 Mar. 1858, Salt Lake City, Ut.
8. Thomas Knox
B. 19 Apr. 1861, Salt Lake City, Utah.
D. 28 Nov. 1935
(Lived in Washington)

WILLIAM KNOX (5' 9" tall -- weight 160 lbs.)

B. 5 July, 1815 at Spittal, near Berwick, England

M. Catherine Tearn on 18 January 1857

(She had just come in with a handcart Company.)

CATHERINE TEARN

Polygamist
wife

B. 25 December 1840 (daughter of Wm Tearn of
Ferryhill, England)

Children

These dates were
verified in the
William Knox diary.

1. Peter (This is the second son named "Peter")
B. 15 May, 1862, Salt Lake City, Utah
Died young. Buried in Salt Lake Cemetery
2. John
B. 9 April 1858, Salt Lake City, Utah
Married Agnes Roper
(I have met two of John's granddaughters,
Arvilla Robinson and Alice Bigman. They
refused to talk to me because they have
disowned John Knox. They said he left
Agnes and never returned. Arvilla's
husband told me on the phone that John
worked in the mine at Park City and
he thinks John may have been killed.)
3. Sarah Ann
B. 13 Apr. 1860, Salt Lake City, Utah
Married Charles Host
4. Catherine
B. 1 Jan. 1864, Logan, Utah
Married Arthur D. Springhall
5. Elenor
B. 25 May 1866, Salt Lake City, Utah.
6. Hannah
B. 9 Nov. 1868, Salt Lake City, Utah

I took this infor-
mation from the
book "Pioneers and
Prominent Men of
Utah".

No verification

7. Helen
Married Samuel Polick
8. Matilda
Married John Thomas
9. Mary
Married George Kemp
10. James
Married Nora Booth

SOME OF THE THINGS YOU CAN EXPECT TO READ
IN BOOK #2

June 19, 1847 -- Takes his family to Burn Hall to the home of Elizabeth's father.

June 20 -- Preaches at the Moor in Sunderland

June 22 -- Goes to Spittal to visit parents.

(Visits and preaches in his home-town of Spittal)

June 29 -- Picks his wife and children up at Burn Hall and returns to Hylton

June 30 -- Picks up his pay from Mr. Dawson at the Pottery and also from Wm Naisby at the Ship Yard.

(At this point he goes back to June 26 and tells more about his visit with his parents. On June 28, again he tells us about coming back to Sunderland from Spittal.)

July 10 -- Elizabeth decides to buy her groceries in Sunderland rather than Hylton.

(Between dates, he does a lot of preaching.)

July 16 -- Elizabeth starts paying off their grocery debt in Hylton. The grocer is unhappy that she has taken her business to Sunderland.

July 18 -- More preaching.

July 24 -- His father comes from Spittal to visit.

July 27 -- He has dream about the American Elders.

(More preaching)

August 15 -- He tells a story of his daughter, Dorothy, two years old, trying to tell him to put out the cat.

August -- Elizabeth has been working in the wheat fields. Now her job is finished.

(More preaching and work at ship yard)

Sept 9 -- Got hurt at work -- a blow to his hand.

Sept. 25 -- Baptized William, Mary Ann and Joseph Burness.

Oct. 16 & 17 -- Left home and spent the night at Burn Hall. Went to Scheam Harbour to preach with his brother-in-law, Wm Tweddell.

(More work at Ship Yard. The Chaters Bank in Sunderland closed down. The Pottery is idle.)

Nov. 2 -- Attended Shipwright Union. Lots of shipwrights out of work.

(Keeps preaching in Sunderland and Scheam Harbour.)

Dec. 4 -- Attended meeting of Benevolent Society of which he has been President.

(More preaching)

Dec. 27 -- Went down to the Sea for a baptism.

Jan. 1, 1848 --- Met with Benevolent Society

Jan. 31 -- Elizabeth had a baby girl born dead.

Feb. 12 -- Baptized someone by name of Hall.

March the 11 -- Performed his first marriage.

March the 12 -- Lots of contention all around -- the Sign of the Times.

(Most of his remarks are about teaching the gospel)

March 23 -- Elizabeth begins to sell their furniture getting ready to go to the United States.

March 31 -- Having a hard time to sell furniture.

April 28 -- Got weighed. He weighed eleven Stones. Hasn't gained any weight in 7 years. 5'9" tall.

(He keeps preaching in the Arcade and presiding over his meetings in Sunderland.)

June 18 -- Went to Newcastle to visit the Saints and his brother, John Knox. From there to conference. He represented the Sunderland Branch with 54 members.

June 26 -- Telegraph news came that in Paris, France, there was another great slaughter among the people.

June 30 -- Newspapers talk of the bloody, horried deaths in Paris -- 20 to 30 thousand.

July 16, 1848 -- He ends this book telling about taking his wife and children to the Arcade where he preached.

I. W. ~~Wright~~ cont of Peter and Dorothy
 not having filled up my first book
 of records I now commence with this small
 one because I have not got a larger therefore
 I shall call this Page 92.

June the 26 - 1847

about six o'clock P.M. I felt my self
 very unwell sick and dizzy I had
 no oil with me but my Mother sent
 for a glass of Brandy I drank half of
 it the time was passing on for to preach
 I thought that Satan wanted to hinder
 me but I felt determined not to be hindered
 the time came and I marched up to my
 pulpit but felt very sick. I opened the meeting
 as usual my congregation was few to what
 I had before yet there was a good feeling
 Saturday Night is not a good night to get
 a great congregation yet I seldom see as many
 in Sunderland I felt my self very
 unfit to preach at first but I forgot
 or did not care so I laid down the
 first principles according to my ability

93 I spoke one hour and did have my testimony to the same I closed the meeting in the usual way I felt very unwell after preaching I was invited to supper by Mr Edward Burnside did rejoice to hear me he said I sat down to a good supper Bacon and eggs after supper he asked me to pray with them I did
 June the 27 this morning I feel a little better but I have no place to preach in therefore I consider this Day to be nearly a lost one I spent the Day by going twice to the doctorings meeting and visiting some of my friends
 June the 28 this morning I am now making to leave Spittal and bound for Hylton after breakfast I took my leave of my Mother and friends accompanied with my Father and Brother W. Gray to the steam Boat there was two steam Boats to sail for Newcastle I nearly lost both of them being detained with the small boat

94 that trade between Spittal and Berwick I got the last Boat Arduncaple and parted with my Father and Brother we have crossed Berwick Burn twenty minutes to ten o'clock A.M. A beautiful morning A good many passengers beside A great number of sheep at twenty five minutes to one o'clock we are just abreast Duncombrough Castle in Northumberland A quarter to two o'clock we are just abreast the Coquet Island at ten minutes to three o'clock we are just abreast New Biggon we are crossing Shields Burn twenty minutes past four o'clock I have arrived safe in a shelter and ready for the five o'clock train for Sunderland I have arrived at Sunderland at sister Habbes and got tea I felt anxious to know how the saints was getting on during my absence all night I felt thankful after visiting some more of the saints I was accompanied about

WILLIAM KNOX DIARY - BOOK #2

Covers from June 19, 1847 to July 16, 1948

The following three typed pages were taken from the back of the William Knox Diary, Book #2. He wrote 8 pages in pencil and then turned the book up-side-down and started over again at the other end of the book. When he started over, he wrote in ink. He also repeated some of the material which he had written in pencil

William Knox, son of Peter Knox, Spittal, near Berwick upon Tweed. I, William Knox, Cooper and Ship Wright, Hylton Toon, New South Sunderland in the County of Durham, England.

June the 19, 1847 --- I left Hylton with wife and two children at six o'clock PM to go to Burn Hall to my wife's Father. We arrived about (too light to read) o'clock.

June the 20 -- Sabbath morning. I left hear accompynd with my brother-in-law. We arrived at Sunderland about nine o'clock and went down to the Moor accompynd with Saints. A char was got. I mounted the same and gave out the first Hymm. The People was stragglng about. I prayed. After the same, I invitted the people to come forward saying that was as it was in the Days of Noah, and Priest Gillies stood up after. I closed the meeting with prayer and we went to the Arcaid where we preached. I opend the meeting. Priest Gillies delevoured a decourse on the restitution of all things spoken by all the Prophets since the world began. The meeting was spirited. Got dinner at Priest E. Gillises. Meet with the saints at two o'clock.

After the meeting I spoke some length of time on the Necesity of the Signs following the Belever. Saccermnt administered. Enjoyed a good feeling in the meeting. After the same, I was desired by one of the Saints to go with hir, so I went and prayed over her according as it is in James the Apostle, the 5 Chap, the 14 veerse.

I was desired this morning as soon as I came into the town to anoint and pray over a child. I got tea at hir house. My Brother-in-law got tea at Priest E. Gillies where I meet him. I could not stoap to the Neight meeting but returned accompynd with my Brother-in-law and an acquentance ? to Berwick. His name is W. Hale, a White Smith and bale flinger. He left us and returned. We arrived safe.

Left Burn Hall and bound for Sunderland about one o'clock PM having my wife and two children. I have arrived at the railway station at a quarter to three o'clock and none waiting for the bell to be run to be off to Newcastle. At three o'clock the trains set off and arrived at gateside station twenty minets to four. From there to my Brother John's. After tea I visited the saints.

June the 22, 1847 -- This morning I got breckfest and left my Brother, John, at ten minets to Eight, the steam Boat to sail at Eight o'clock. I arrived in toon. She set of at twenty five mintes past Eight o'clock AM and crossed the bar at five minots past ten. A Beautifully morning. A point of the Crocket Island at a quarter to one o'clock. I have arrived safe at Berwick at twenty minets past

five o'clock P.M. and from there to Spittal to where I landed at my parents, not having been hear this five years.

June the 23 -- After dinner Mr. John Alexander came up to my Father's and told me that he had secured the School room and that I can have it to neight. He is a Baptist but he wants me to be tied up to somthing like principles. I sent the bell man about the toon to notify the people that Wm Knox, a native of Spittal, would deliver a lecter on the fulnefs of the Gosple of Jesus Christ at half past seven this neight. I got a good congration and had great liberty to preach for I got good attention. This is the first time that the Gosple in its fulnefs has been preached in Spittal.

June the 25 -- This morning at five o'clock I went down to the sea and had a bath. It is a beautiful morning. At half past seven o'clock this neight I went to the preaching room. A good congration came. I had great liberty. They gave good atention, having there Bibles with them.

June the 26 -- I have employed the Bell Man to go about the town this evening to tell the people that I, a native of Spittal, will deliver a lecture on the fulnefs of the everlasting gosple as taught by Jesus Christ and his Apostles 1800 years ago.

After the Bell man called, I felt very sick and dufsy. About half past Six o'clock I did not feel very able to stand up and delever a lecturer but I trusted, or was determined to preach the gosple according to the ability that God giveth me. The time came. I opend the meeting by singing and prayer. I commended to speak but I felt very unfit for the same. The people were very attentive, having there Bibles. I forgot that was sick nearly. I spoke one hour and bored my testimoney to the work of the Lord.

June the 27 -- Sabbeth. This Day is a lost one. I could not get a place to preach in being all ocupyed. I went to the meeting in this town, or Spittal, in the fornnon. The people are not setified. After dinner I went to Tweedmouth meeting to Bablon.

June the 28 -- This morning I am making ready to be off. I have nearly lost both boats but I have got the last one. We have crosed the Berwick Bar at twenty minits to ten o'clock. A beautiful morning. At twenty five minutes to one o'clock, we are just abreast Duncenburgh Castle in Northumberland. As beautiful a Day as ever Shone from the Heavens. A quarter to two o'clock just abreast of the Socket Island. At ten minets to three o'clock PM we are abreast of New Biggon crosng Shields bar. Twenty minuts past four I arrived safe at the South Sheilds Railway train ready for the five o'clock train for Sunderland. I arrived here. Visited some of the Saints of God. Found things satfectory. I arrived at Hylton once more.

June the 29 -- This morning about nine o'clock I am now on my way to bring my wif and two childrine hom from Burn Hall. I have arrived up and found all well. After dinner we took our leave and bound for Hylton. We have arrived saf hom again and Knelt down to our family alter and returnd thanks to almighty God for his goodnefs.

June the 30 -- This morning I have comenced to work at the Pottery.

July the 3 -- Setterday Neight. I have receved the some of 19 S 3D from Mr. Dawson, likewise, five and six pence from Wm Naisby Shipe Builder, for one Days work and wedge money is a shilling this day.

I statted to C. Dawson that I would eighter have to continey at the Pottery or the ship yard becaus I feld that it would do me harm to work all Day in the shipyard and come to the pottery at Neight to work. A quarter Day I told him that I would contuny at the Pottery if he would give me eighteen shilling a week, house and firing. He said he wants consider about it.

WILLIAM KNOX DIARY -- BOOK #2

In the back of Book #2, William Knox wrote a few pages in pencil. He now turns the book around and starts writing in ink. He goes back in time to June 26 and rewrites some of his experiences at Spittal.

I, Wm Knox, son of Peter and Dorothy Knox, having filled up my first book of records, I now commence with this small one because I have not got a larger. Therefore, I shall call this page 92.

June the 26, 1847 -- About six o'clock P.M. I felt myself very unwell, sick and dufsey (dizzy). I had no oil with me but my mother sent for a glass of Brandy. I drank half of it. The time was pafsing on for to preach. I thought that Satin wanted to hinder me but I felt determined not to be hindrd.

The time came and I marched up to my post but felt very sick. I opened the meeting as usuly. My congrotation was few to what I had before, yet there was a good feeling. Setterday Neight is not a good neight to get a great congrotation, yet I seldom see as many in Sunderland. I felt myself very unfit to preach at first, but I forgot, or did not care, so I laid down the first principles according to my ablety.

I spoke one hour and did bare my testamony to the same. I closed the meeting in the usuly way. I felt very unwell. After preaching I was invited to supper by M. Edward Burn. He did rejoice to hear me, he said. I sat down to a good supper, bacon and eggs. After supper he asked me to pray with them. I did.

June the 27 -- This morning I felt a little better but I have no place to preach. Therefore, I consider this day to be nearly a lost one. I spent the day by going twice to the sectarings meetings and visiting some of my friends.

June the 28 -- This morning I am making to leave Spittal and bound for Hylton. After brickfast I took my leave of my mother and friends, accompynd with my father and Brother Wm Gray to the steem boat. There was two stem boats to sail for Newcastle. I nearly lost both of them, being detained with the small boat that traids between Spittal and Berwick. I got the last boat, Ardencaple, and parted with my father and brother. We have crossed Berwick Barr twenty minutes to ten o'clock A.M. A beautiful morning. A good many pafsengers, besides a great number of sheep. At twenty five minets to one o'clock we are just abreast Dunconburgh Castle in Northumberland. A quarter to two o'clock we are just abreast New Biggen. We are crosing Sheilds Barr twenty minets past four o'clock. I have arrived safe in s (must stand for "South) Shields and ready for the five o'clock train for Sunderland.

I have arrived at Sunderland at Sister Matther's and got tea. I felt ancous to know how the saints was getting on during my absence. All right. I felt thankful after visiting some more of the saints. I was accompynd about a mile and half by Priest E Gillies. We parted. I got to Hylton about eleven o'clock. Got supper and went to rest.

June the 29 -- This morning about nine o'clock I am ready to go to Burn Hall to bring my wife and two children home. I have arrived and found all well. After dinner we have left. A beautiful day. About five o'clock we have got into our house again. I knelt down with my partner and young family and offered my thanks to God for his goodness towards us.

June the 30 -- I have going to the Pottery this morning to work.

July 3, 1847 -- I told Mr. Dawson that I would have to continue either at the shipyard or at the pottery for I felt that I was not able to supply both places and I would take three shillings per day, house and firing. He said he would consider about it. I have received the sum of 19 S 3D for five days and half at three and six pence per day from Mr. Dawson. Likewise 5S 6D from Mr. Naisly ship builder.

July the 4 -- I have attended Sunderland. I opened the meeting. Priest E. Gillies preached. I got dinner. My wife being down with me she got dinner at Sister Matteson.

After the afternoon service my wife and children got tea at Sister Matteson. At six o'clock I opened the meeting and carried it through. We returned safe home.

July the 8 -- Elder Wm Speakman, Elder C. Philips paid us a visit. Stopped all night.

July the 9 -- The Elders went down to Sunderland. This night I have received the sum of 19 S 3D for five days and half.

July the 10 -- My wife has going down to Sunderland to purchase our weeks food. We have got all our provisions in Hylton at B Rontree these last four years but finding we are getting into his debt and no hope of redeeming the same but still going farther. We owe him 5L 2S 0½D. My wife has returned accompanied with the above Elders. She has our weeks provisions, two shillings sheepur, the article as good if not better. Therefore, by this way, if I enjoy good health and have work and the blessing of God rest upon us I will pay him every farthing for it grievous me to be in debt. If we had been dealing at the tanri instead of Rontree we would have been five pounds in pocket.

July the 11 -- I went down to Sunderland accompanied with the above Elders. Elder Speakman preached. I got dinner at Priest Gillies. He told me that the Saints was finding fault with me, the manner that I spoke last Sabbath night. I spoke as I was led to, spirit giving a general exhortation to lay aside all things that tended to destroy our peace and to be armed with the whole armour of God.

I made it known to Elder Speakman I thought it a good opportunity to get all things put to right while our Presiding Elder of this conference was present. There was another case, likewise, to be brought forward. The afternoon meeting was opened by Elder Wm Speakman, President, in the usual way. Before partaking of the bread and wine the President told us it was necessary to examine our selves before we partook of the sacrament. He told the saints that there was something wrong in this little branch of the Church of Jesus Christ

and it ought not to be. He was informed they have been speaking against there President. He gave some good teachings in regard to speaking against the head so I stood up and told them that I was not yet purfet but, if they was not satisfied with me for there President, and, if they could lay any thing to my charge to speak for, I was willing to step aside and that some one else preside over you and I will likewise endeavour to help on the work but I am willing to adhear to counle. So Elder Speekman asked the saints if they wanted me still to preside over them by the show of hands.

They had to show it. It was don quickly by the show of every hand and a sister got up and stated that it was through her that this got ~~afat~~ but she did not intend any harm for she always thought very highly of Br. Knox. This was sattled with a good felling.

The other case was brought forward. The charge was against Br. C.C. teacher for being drunk and preaching the gospel in this state. He acknowledged to the same and repented and was determined to do better for the future. This is the first time that any has been brought forward to answere for any thing before the Church ever since we became a Church or a branch.

Now comes the fullment of that with which is riting in page 76, large book. It was spoken in tongues by me, interpereted by Elder Blackett. It was proposed and seconed that Priest Ebansar Gillies to the office of Alder. Carried. Likewise, Brother Galeo be ordained to the office of decond. Carried. Likewise B. Peterey be ordained to the office of Priest as soon as he returns from sea. This was attended to. We pertook of the Bread and Wine. Closed the meeting with a good feeling.

We, the saints, always have indevered to asist by giving as much money to releveing the travling Elders. Elder Speekman exprefsed his thankfulnefs for the kindnefs that he was reserved and supplied as he was about to leave us and go to Crlisle having receivd nothing from the Newcastle Branch. Elder Speekman, Elder C. Phelps and my self, we all preached in the evening servis. After the same, I returned hom.

July the 16 -- I hav received the same of 1L 1S 10¹/₂D for five days and quarter. My wif went to B. Rontree, Grofser, and gave him one shilling toward the old debt. He received it but he abused her and told her that we had behaved worse than any boady. What put him about is that we have left him. We have been paying him someway about one and six pence a week, his articles that much over charge, likewise inferrier.

He threttand to take us before the Bench unlefs she would promise him 2S 6D per week. She told him that she would not promise more but she would pay it as fast as pofsable for the cheeper she got hir thing. The sooner he wants get his money for there no other way to gir clear of him then to leav his shoap and go to a cheaper which she has done.

July the 17 - My wif went down to Sunderland and bought our provisions.

July the 18 -- This morning being Sabbath about seven o'clock I got my brickfast and left Hylton to preach the gospel some where. While on my way, I felt enclined to go to Shinyrow where I mad my first commencement. A pleasent morning. I got to the old stand and stood a short time considering how I was to rais a congration. While in this attude of consideration, a man upon horseback asked me if the road that he was going was the wright one to the Marques Stabbles. I told him that I was a strainger. He pafsed on.

I thought it would be the best way to notify the people by doing it myself so I left the old stand and went down to the bottom of the vileg at the end house. A man was standing at the door. I told him that I was going to deliver a lecture at the old place as soon as I could raise a congration. He said he could not attend because he was looking for a preacher to com to preach in his house. I said to him, "If your disapointed of him, will you except of me?" He said he would but he thought that he would come for he is such a fine man, Mr. Hopper. While speaking about the preacher, the man that asked me the road while on Horseback came forward to the old man and me.

He smiled as if he was acquainted with me. I shook hads with him. He likewise with the old man and he happened to be Mr. Hopper, the ranter or Primivit Methood Preacher which the old man was looking for. I told the said Mr. Hopper that I was going to delever a lecture. I invited him. He asked what boady I belonged to. The old man told him The Latter Day Saints. He changed his countenance from chearful to sad or searious. I asked him if he would let me preach in his room as I had not a congration. O what a surous looks! He put me in mind of the old serious people that Jesus Christ said would strand at a nat and swallow it canible.

He talked a great deal about the soul and about Jesus and, beleving, the old man standing in the dore stead and plasing his hand against his brest, and as it were swallowing every word that Mr. H. spouk. I told him that I best be on my busnefs and that I was to notify the people so I said in the presense of them, "Let us commence to worship God by singing the first Hymn." I lined it out. They stood along side of me until I started to sing. I commenced at there Chapple dore as they steeped within the door and bad me God Speed. After I sung a carel, I acted then as Bell man, singing and talking until I got to the old stand. The people drew up, so I Preached the gosple according to the abilety that God gave me and returned hom. Got dinner and off for Cumberland.

Elder C. Phelps was thare. I opend in the usuly way. Charls Phelps and me carried on the meeting. Got tea at sister Matteson. The above Elder opend the Neight meeting --- his subject, "Baptism for the dead. I spoak some time on the same subject. The meeting closed. I got safe home.

July the 19 -- This Day I feel muchcast-down, expecting a letter for me to appear before a Branch of magstrats, B. Rontree the caus of it, but I prayed to my Heavenly Father that a stoap be put

to it for the gospels sake, at the same time making every endeavour to pay the same as fast as possible. My wif has going out to work in the fields hay, making ten pence per Day. Left the two Children with my sister, Dorothy, in charge -- three pence per Day for the sam.

July the 20 -- My prayer is hard and a stoap as yet. I have continued to make a larg tub two feet one inch high, three feet three inches Broad, one inch and three quarters thick when finished. This neight, sister Dorothy told my wife to put another nurse which she did.

July the 21 -- My wif has found another nurse, Elisabeth Polprch, three pence pr day for hir truble.

July 23 -- I have received twenty one shillings for six Days.

July the 24 -- This day I and another man has carried the tub on a hand barrow from the Pottery to the masters house. He is well pleased with it. It has a cover with Braf's Bands, likewise the spout, all to be placed on Monday. This neight my wif has received five shillings and too half pence for six Days and quarter. She is not setifysed becaus A quarter Day that they wrought is not payed, making six Days and half. My wif has payed the som of two Shillings to B. Rontree. While in the act of riting, nuse cam that my Father had come and was at sister Elenors. At length he cam to our hous, the first tim that he has been in Hylton. He was very unusll.

July the 25 -- Sabbeth this morning. I intended to go to Shiney Row to Preach but being that my Father was here and had but a short time to stopd did not go but went up the river to see Sister Elisabeth Robson. Brother Peter Robson brought down his small Boat so I accompynd Father and him. When we landed, I left my Father in there house. Cam hom, got dinner, went down to Sunderland. Opened as usuly.

At the close of the meeting, I called a Counsle in order to Know how to proceed to get the gospel Preached or to get the People to com and hear. Elder C. Phelps, Elder Ebeneser Gillas, Fletcher C. Charlton, Decon John Gales proposed and second that we git a larg sign Board carried amongst the rest of the bufsnefs. Elder C. Phelps propossd a day to be set apart to fast and pray that God may grant unto us our requests. Seconded, carried that Sabbeth first be set apart to fast and pray at the close of this meeting. I returnd hom because of my father.

July the 26 -- This morning I did not go to work before nin o'clock. I parted with my Father about the sam tim. He went down to Sundarl with the Carrier. He felt very unwell and ancous to git hom. This Day I have placed the tub and spout and pleases exceednly well.

July the 27 -- This morning my dreams doo truble me being amongst two or three of our Amerecen Elders some of the twelve osten fled. There names is partely going from me. I dremt while they were in the act of praying, two of them together, multitudes of People was in

the act of rushing upon them. I seed them -- the multitude just about to smither our Brethern but they never flinshed, but prayed on. The cry of the multitude was that there was a Sunderland Elder, that was my self. Some women made every effort to get me out of the percussion in case they, the mob, should fall upon me. I thought it was not wright to fly from percussion but this came to mind -- when your purcuted in one City flee to another. I had a great deal to doe with those Elders in meetings which has going partely from me. I, likewise, coined a great many Lis out of my head. At the close of this day, nothing has happened to hurt us as far as I know.

July the 30 -- Nothing has happened of any importence up to this time. I have received the sum of 21 shillings for six days work.

July the 31 -- This day I have put a slus into one of Mr. Dawsons Fields. It is mad of oak Mahoggny and Fir. The fram is oak, the water stopper Fir, the lifter Mehoggney. This neight my wif has received the som of four shilling and six pence. She has, likewise, going to Sunderland after hir Days work to purcuss our provisions. She has returned. Alls well.

August the 1 -- 1847 -----Sabbeth morning. I left Hylton about nin o'clock and met with the Saints in the Arcaid Sunderland. Five years to day was our wedden Day and instead of selebrating this day by feasting, I am fasting and praying that the Lord may blefs us and add to our numbers. I spent this Day very comfortable. Opened the meetings as usuley. Broak my fast with Elder F. Gillies. Returned safe hom.

August the 6 -- Sabbeth. This morning I meet in the Arcaid as usuell at half pas ten o'clock A.M., but the encouradgement after making four miles and leaving my wif and family behind truly little indead. The congration Elder Ebniser Gillian, Decon John Gales, Brother John Petery. I told them that this would not doe so we left the Arcaid and to the Moor. A chair was got. I mounted it and gave out the first Hymn. The people straggled about.

After prayer I invited the people forward. I made all the noise that I could and told the peopl that God was about to com out of his hiding place to vex the Nations. After speking a while and a good congration had gathered, I invited Elder Gillies to the chair. He delivered the gosple in its fulnefs. I closed the meeting by baring my testimoney before the congration and inviting all to our place of worship.

On our way to Elder Gillies, we were haild by a woman. She asked if we were the sam that was preaching on the Moor and what people and the fundmentel principles of our Church. We told hir. She appeared glad of the information that we gave. She had hard many things against the Lattur Day Saints but she was determind to Know for hir self. We stood about three quarters of an hour on the street. She promised to come to our prayer on Weddensday neight. I promised to bring hir a Book setting forth our principles. I felt glad that we had been on the Moor.

Got dinner with the afore Brother. Meet in the after noon as usuly. Got tea with the sam. Went to our meeting. It begun to rain fast. The interence into the Arcaid was filled with people. I went up stares to our place and seing that our congrotation was very small, I went down again amongst the people and did invit them all to com up stares for a lecture would be delivored on Apostlic Religon. Five or six cam. I opned the meeting in the usuly way and spok some length of time on the firs principles. Elder Gillies followed on the sam. After the sam I took my leave of the Saints and maid the best of my way hom having to contend with a corse neight wind and raind dark and dreary. I returned safe hom.

August the 11 -- After work, I left Hylton taking with me the Voice of Warning Bible and Hymn Book. I arrived in tim at Eight o'clock PM. I opned the meeting. While singing, the woman came in that promised on Sabbeth. I felt greatly Blefsed. In this meeting I gave hir the Voice of Warning to read. She said that she would attend on Sabbeth. I closed the meeting and returned home between eleven and twelve o'clock.

August the 13 -- I have received the som of twenty one shillings for six days.

August the 15 -- I left my wife and Children this morning about Eight o'clock. Beautifully wether. I arrived in Sunderland but could not get into our Preaching Room. The reson was all the rooms in the Arcaid is taken except ours. They are exbeting a Colection of was-work figures. The key being taking away by some of the men here. Was a difsapointment after walking about four miles. I considered two or moments what to doe so I thought the best that could be done was to seek the Key so I set off accompynd with Br. John Gales. After a little truble, it was got. In time I opened the meeting in usuly way and spok a short time from the 34 Psalm, begining at the 8 varse. Elder Gilles fowllod. I closed the meeting and got dinner at the above house. Meet again at the usuly time. I opened the same. After Sacrament, I felt it good to wait upon the Lord. I closed the meeting with a good filling. The women that came to our prayer meeting fulfilled her promise.

I got tea, likewise, with Elder Gilles. Meet at six o'clock but little incouradgment. I opned the usuly way and spok from the third Chapt of John Gosple. I got home and all well.

While I was eatting my supper, my wife making preporation for bed, the Children playing about the house, my wife generally puts the Cat out of the house all night, but the cat hid himself. Therefore, he was not put out. My Daughter, Dorothy, she will be two years old the 22 of September but cannot speek any yet, she being stripted, hir close off. She put off hir shinny, likewise, and was naked as she was born. She pointed to the dore and tried to speek. Likewise, pointed below the bead. I could not understand what she wanted. She, seeing that I did not Know what she ment, the Cat generley lies at the fire side in a corner. She lay down in the Cats place and metated him. She had a hard bed. I could not amagin whd she ment. I never seed the like before.

After comitting ourselves to the care of our heavenly Father, went to sleep.

August the 16 -- This morning before six o'clock, while making ready to go to work, I had Acacon to look below the bed. In so doing, I found out the interportation. It was the Cat was there. Dorothy had seen him go in below the bed. Therefor, she Knew that was not his place but to the dore. A Man with all his proper sences, but not allowed to speek, could not acted better than she.

August the 18 -- After work, I left Hylton about seven o'clock for Sunderland to attend our prayer meeting. I got there in time. I opened the meeting. After the close of the same, I returned safe home.

August the 20 -- My wife has comenced this day at M. Lawsons to shear. At dinner time I brought home a Barel to hold the rain water. This neight I have received the som of 1L 1S for six days.

August the 21 -- My wife has received the som 3S 6D. I left Hylton about six o'clock this neight for Sunderland. I arrived there and payed the grocers bill. Visited the Saints. Bought a pair of Boots for seven Shillings and six pence. Got a Millennial Star and returned home about twelve o'clock. After supper I read some of the Star. Went to bed.

August the 22 -- Sabbath. This morning I have stoped at hom being tired. It is a long time since I spent a Sabbath fornone with my wife and famly. After dinner I went to Sunderland. Opened the meetings usuly. Just before the close of the Neight meeting Br John Petery was sesed with a severe sicknefs. Sister Ann Stabler called upon me to lay hands upon him, which I did and rebucked the desess in the name of Jesus Christ and by the authority of the holy Priesthood. He was like one that was dead. I had no soner taken my hands of his head then Sister Ann Middelton stood wating upon me for to lay hands on sister Martha Collonwood. While engaged in the sam, the above Brother commenced to voment. The meeting was rather confused. I told them I thought wisdom to close the meeting which I did. The healing power was mad manefast in our midst. He was restored. I hard nothing of hir.

I took my leave of the Saints and come away hom but Sister Ann Stabler wanted a few words with me. She hopped that I would give her setefaction. I said I would. She told me that she hadn't put aney confidence in me as a President ever since Elder David Candland left and she had going back ever since. The reason way, it was told her that I said that I would not firgive Elder David Candland. She being rong. informed for I told hir that I said I could forgive and had forgiven but I could not forget.

Some said that they could forget and forgive, so I said I would have to be deprived of my memory to forget aney thing. So I satisfysed her. We parted with a good filling. I arrived home and all rite.

August the 23 -- After work I wrote a letter to Elder Ebneser Gillies, Sunderland, informing him what I considred wisdom. We had received inveations to notify the people of Bills stating the different subjects or doctrines of the Church of Jesus Christ that is now orgnised on the Earth in these Last Days. That none of them

should be giving to any Person or persons until a Counsel meeting, that all things may be done in order.

August the 27 -- I have received the sum of twenty one shillings and tenpence half penny for six days and quarter. My wife has, likewise received ten shillings for five Days -- a two shillings per day. She is done at Mr. L at present, the wheat being all cut down, the other not up as yet. The weather is very suitable for the harvest. The Flour two and six pence per stone. Wheat two and two pence per stone. Potatoes 1S 2D per Peck.

August the 28 -- Sitterday. I have put three Blocks down fort to put Messrs Dawsons Keels upon to repare on Monday morning. After work I went down to Sunderland, payed for the groceries. Likewise, meet with the Saints and between seven and Eight o'clock we went down to the sea for to attend the great law of adobson (He means "absolution") even Baptism for the remissing of sins. A pleasant Night. While in the act of preperation for the same, a young man stepped forward to me and asked me if I had any objections of him accompying me in the water. "No" says I. So, I told him that I was making ready to Baptise some Females, but if he had no objection to be Baptised for the remision of his sins, he was welcom. He said he did not agree with the doctrin but he wanted to Bath and he was afraid to go into the water himself being a stranger. I was ready and went into the water up to my loyn to see and feel in case of danger.

I felt all was rite. Came out again and received by the hand sister Mary Stabler for re-Baptism. She was very feeble and narvis and told me that she was very week. I told hir to keep up hir heart for she had a strong Brother. So, I Baptised her, Buried her in the watery elements. The water gave away and received hir. She was covered gently with the same. I saw her rising to newnefs of life. I cannot describe my feelings, such a pleasant sensation to newnefs of life, and gently led her to the shore.

I likewise received Brother (name was left out) Burnets wife. I asked hir at the waters edg if she was willing to take upon hir the Name of Jesus and Keep his Commandments. She said, "yes". Hers is some difference, the above sisters being in the Church but desirous to walk in more holinefs before the Lord got re-baptised, our Brothers wife not having been in the Church but was about to attend to the great law of adobson (this word is written very clearly. I imagine he means "absolution") She went into the water, apparently anxious to obey the great command of God, so I baptised hir rejoising in the water. Came forth out of the same, got all put in order again, and returned hom.

August the 30 -- This morning I, with asistings have blocked one of Messrs John Dawsons Keels. All has going on well. The fine flower 2S 4D per stone.

August the 31 -- Finis the Keel.

September the 1 -- This morning at Four o'clock or about, made the Blocks higher to Block another Keep.

Sept the 3 -- I have received 1L 8S 4½D.

Sept the 4 -- My Wife has received the some of six shillings. This being saturday night and as it is customery for my wife to clean the house, she comenced to clean after a hard Day Shearing. Elder Charles Philips paid us a visit. Stopped all Night. The Markets is lowering the Fine Flower 2D & 2D.

Sept the 5 -- This morning I and Elder Phelps left Hylton and bound for Sunderland. The Day was spent in the usuly way. I parted with the Saints, likewise Elder Phelps, (not) expecting to see him again for a seson for he has a call to go to Dover to Preside over a Branch of the Church of Jesus Christ.

September the 9 -- This Day I hav got a severe blow being very bufsey Planking or endeavoring to get a Plank up to the timbers. I put my hand up to shift a wedg. The man that was asisting, struck with his mall upon the wedge but my hand happned to be there and received the blow. I have wrought all Day but sufferd much from the same. This neight I have had two Leaches on and likewise anointed with oil.

September the 10 -- This Day I have suffered with my hand but still I have attended my work and have received this Neight the som of one pound, sixteen shillings, two Days over time, making eight Days.

Sept the 12 -- Sabbeth. I have attended Sunderland as usuly but little encouradgment. The means made use of seems to have no effect. We cannot git the People to come out but whether the fault is in our selves or the People, I cannot tell at present. We are endeavouring to notify the People by giving them invitations stating the different doctrins in this Church.

September the 18 -- My wife has received the some of seven shillings and six pence, the last of hir shearing money.

Sept the 19 -- Sabbeth morning. I am now riting this, fieling it not convenant to go to Sunderland until after dinner. I have attended Sunderland meet with the Saints. Elder W. Speakman, President of the Cirlisle Conference to which this, the Sunderland Branch, belong to, he gave us beautiful teaching and spoke highly of us and to our behaviour with Elder Philips in adminerstring to his necesites. The Saints in Sunderland Branch, thou few in number, yet ready to Surker the Servents of the Lord by giving them money, faith and prayers. For my part, I feel it a pleasure to give that the work of the Lord may rool on, beleveing that I am laying up tresures in heaven where neither Banks doo brak nor thevis break through and steal. I don't feel inclined to not down what money I have giving since I was Born of the water and the Spirit, but this I will say that I have not been amongst the least. I am onley sorry that I cannot doe more. God has blesfed me and I am thankful I am one of the week things that is called into the Minestery in these Last Days, especelly to Preside having, likewise, hard to labour Daly for these last three weeks. I have not had aney time to improve or to sarch and treasure up truth, but as I am plased at the head of this little Branch of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter

Day Saints, I feel as long as I have, or can, I will assist the work of the Lord. After Preaching was over, I returned home but a weat Neight.

Sept. the 21 -- Finised the Keel, the Fine Flour 2S dD per stone. The wether good.

Sept. the 24 -- I have recieved the some of twenty six shillings and six pence.

Sept. the 25 -- Setterday. This Day after work I went down to Sunderland and Baptised the fowlling persons. I was acompyned down to the Sea with the Saints while prepairing for Baptism. It commenced to rain very fast so Baptised William Burnefs, Mary Ann Burnefs, Joseph Burnefs, A M Land. (He left two bland spaces here) Elder Ebneser Gillies accompyned the above home, about four miles. We took the last train and came back to Sunderland. The above Elder accompyned me home to Hylton and all right.

Sept. the 26 -- This morning I and Elder Gillies left Hylton and arrived at Sunderland. Meet in the Arcaid. The Congration but small. Got dinner with the above. The Day was spent in the usuley way. Got tea with the same. There was just one strainger at our meeting. After the same, I returned home.

Sept. the 28 -- This morning about Seven o'clock Mr. Wm. Naisly, ship Builder, Sent a boy to the Pottery where I was working for me to come dercetly if Mr. Dawson could Spare me, to help to Caulk his ship toap. I went, but my hand not being altogether sound from the blow that I received on the 9 of Sept. this said month, the first Days Caulking the Binds generly hardest. My hand swelled and was very sore but I finised my work and gave satisfaction.

Sept. the 30 -- This Neight the Ships toap is caulked having wrought durin the three Days and sufferd much pain so I went to Mr. Naisby and said I sepose your done with me. He said he did not Know, as much as to say that he wanted me to contuney but I told him that I could not on account of my hand and I was glad that the caulking was done for the present.

October the 1 --- 1847 - This morning I started work at the Pottery again. Received the (left out the word sum) of ten shillings & six pence for three Days.

October the 2 -- Receved the some of 13S & 6D for three Days from Mr. Naisby. Nothing of any unportence out of the generall run, but, I will state the generell run of things. During this week a Larg ship, about or between nine and ten hundered tones Burdon, launched from Mr. F. Gales Hylton yard. On Sept. the 25 she was towed down the river to the North Docks Sunderland where one of the carpenters on ship wrights that asisted down with the Ship, J. Ransen, got one of his legs broken and is in a dangrous state. From the time that she was lanchd to October that four sever accedence has happned during six Days -- legs broken, a Riggers toes taken off, the forman, Naizby, head sore cut. A iron Bolt fell from

the Riggers, came slent down, and cut his head Severly. If it had come straight, he would been Killed. On the sam Day, the first, an apprentice, T. Robson, to Mr. T. Gailles, fell into the fore Hold -- was amifsing about three o'clock P.J. and could not be found until the next morning where he had laing all neight unsensable and in a dangrefs state. This all haponed abord of this ship.

There never was known so many accedence. Robergs Murders, the News papers genarall topic.

The Churches of the Day are complaning of there deadnefs. I hear them say that they don't Know how it is, for there Preachers appears to be as searious as ever they were, but they cannot bring out the Holy Ghost as they ust to doe. The good Spirit of God is leaving them because they have rejected to yeald to the Same. Wickednefs is gaining ground. The Cup of inequity is fast approaching to the Brim. This is the generall state of things.

October the 3 -- Sabbeth. I have attended Sunderland after Dinner. Meet with the Saints at two o'clock. Opened the meeting in the usuly form. I was led to exort one and all of us to be up and be doing and to push on the work of the Lord. At the close of the same, I called a Councell meeting that proper means might be used to git the Gosple spread in Sunderland, to enbrafs every oppurtunity. Got tea at Elder E. Gilless. Opned the meeting again in the usuly form. After the Sam I took my leave of the saints and returned safe home.

October the 4 -- After work I and my wife went down to Sunderland for to git re-Baptised by the above Elder. We meet other seven who had come forward to get Baptised. We got down to the Sea but it was dark. The sea was coarse but I told Elder Speekman that I would go into the water first and see if there was any danger, which I did. The sea was going back or ebbing. When I got into the sea I prceived it was dangouris. I came out and told them but Elder Speekman was all ready for coming in so we went, both into the sea but we were sone stoped for, as sone as the above Elder seed the great rowling was coming, he turned about and said that there would not be aney Baptised hear to Neight. We came out but I first went in a little way again and stooped down before the wave and I got drenched over head. We all returned home unbaptised.

Oct the 10 -- Sabbeth. I meet with the Saints as usuly. Got into our new room but still in the arcaid.

October the 15 -- Received the Some of 21 Shillings.

Do the 16 -- After work I left my home and went to Burn Hall where I stoped all neight.

Do the 17 -- Sabbeth morning. The wether fine. I left the above place about nine o'clock accompynd with Wm Tweddell, my Brother-in-law, or my wifes Brother for Scheam Harbour, the distance three miles from Burn Hall, nine from Hylton. I was Counceled to go by the Persiding Elder of the Conference to entroduce the Gosple, if pofsable, into that place and to contuny or to send other Elders as I felt. We arrived about ten o'clock. I thought the best that I could doe now to endeavour to magnyfie my offace so I left my Br. at the place where I considred would be likleyest to be my stand.

The reason I left him is because I was going to act the Bell man. He was not accustomed to such kind of persistence. I could not see any other way so I commenced to shout, "This is to give notice that a Lecture will be delivered on the fulness of the everlasting Gospel of Jesus Christ as taught by himself and his Apostles 1800 years ago with the signs, at the market place at half past ten o'clock." I did not spare but cried aloud inasmuch that my Brother thought that I had commenced to Preach. Yea, I alarmed the people. He came to me and went through most of the town with me. I cannot relate all that I said to the people but I brought their heads out of the windows and out of the doors. It appeared something thing strange did my proceedings so I took my stand and sung the first Hymn and prayed. The people drew up, about thirty, so I preached the Gospel according to my ability for the first time that ever it was heard in this said place. I returned to Burn Hall. Got dinner. After tea I left and got safe home.

Oct the 18 - I attended the Shipwrights Union. It was carried that the Sunderland shipwrights should strike off unless they continue at 4 s 6d per Day. The Masters want a reduction 4 s per Day.

Oct the 20 - After work I left Hylton for Sunderland and attended the Wednesday Night prayer meeting.

Do the 21 - This morning about seven o'clock while at work in the Pottery Mr W Naisby, Ship Builder, sent for me to Caulk. I went.

Do the 22 - This Day Charters Bank in Sunderland shut up. Cannot meet the demands which has caused a great stagnation all at once for Masters cannot find money to pay wages. I have received 17 s 6d for five Days at the Pottery. Ralph Tait died this night, very sudden.

Oct the 23 -- This morning the Pottery is laid idle and many of the Ship yards which has caused murmuring or a very gloomy prospect, not only Hylton but Sunderland and the whole Country round about. I have received the some of 13 s 6d for three Days from Mr. Naisby. I have been very fortunate for I would have been idle to Day if the above had not sent for me. After work I left home and took my Daughter Elisabeth with me to Burn Hall. We arrived there about nine. Got supper and went to bed.

Oct 24 -- Sabbath morning. I left home about nine o'clock for Seaham Harbour. The weather fine so soon as I came into the town I went through the streets that I missed last Sabbath. I changed my words to "This is to give notice that lecture will be delivered on the principles of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints in the market place at half past ten o'clock." I was alone but anxious to make known the truth. I cried aloud and spared no trouble. I took my stand alone with my Book in my hand for the signal. The people drew up. I opened with prayer for I had a heavy cold and could not sing. My subject as it was in the Days of Noah so I preached the Gospel according to my ability or according to the ability that God gave me, to about forty.

I returned back to Burn Hall. Got dinner. My wife came just when we got done. I left the above place for Sunderland. I arrived about three o'clock PM in the Arcaid, but disappoointed for when I entered the meeting, I expected to see a Amerian Elder which was to come from Newcastle but the disappontment was not much, altho I was very tard or forteeged. I enjoyed the meeting of Saints. Got tea at Sister Mattisons. Met as usuly after the same. I returned home.

October the 27 -- All hands payed of from M Naisby. After the same, I left Hylton to attend the Prayer at Sunderland. I arrived just in time. I opned the meeting by singing and prayer. After the same, I exorted the Saints to take a part, or each to ocupy a portion of the time that we might comfort and build each other up & leaving the meeting to the Saints, Br. Pottery fowllled baring a good testimony of the goodnefs of God. After the same, there was a deadnefs, none seming to embrace the time just as it were a speakers meeting. I rose up and exorted them from that deadnefs and told them that the Spirits of the prophets are subjects to the Prophets and that a mesure of the spirit is giving to every one to prophchi with all. It had the effect. After the same, I returny home.

Oct. the 28 - This Day I wrought to Missr Dawson the after none and got a promice to start on Monday morning.

Oct. the 29 - Being idle and my wife not at home, I left Hylton to visit the Saints at Sunderland. When I got there, I had plesure to dine in Company with Elder Hetherinton and his wife, one of the Seventys from Amarica at Ebnezor Gillies. I spent the Day amongst the Saints and returned home.

October the 30 --
After Dinner I left for Burn Hall where I found my wife and children well.

Oct. the 31 -- Sabbeth morning. I left this place for Scham Harbour. I took my old stand with Book in hand for a signel. At half past ten AM I commenced to sing and offerd up prayer to my Heavny Father. The people began to draw up. I had a good congration, very attentive. At the close of the meeting, I gave four "Fire Side visitors" which sets for the Gosple, one Proclamation, a few Invatiations and a Book which contains the principles of eternal truth. I told them that if I did not, on the fowlling sabbeth there would be another. I felt ancious that a righteous Branch should be raised up in this place. I rturned to Burn Hall again. Got dinner. After tea, we left the above place for home. My wife carried the youngest and I for the oldest. We got home in safty.

November the 2 -- This neight I attended the Shipwright union. A grate number of shipwrights out of work. There going to recieve pay Setterday Neight. Left the Union room and went to Mr. Naisby where I received the some of 14S 6D for three Days. One shilling wedge money. From there to M. Lees. There I rote a letter for them. Returned home.

November the 3 - After work I attended the prayer meeting at Sunderland. Returnd safe home.

Nov. the 5 -- I received the some of 15S 9D for four and half days.

November the 7 -- This morning being Sabbath, we, the hole family, went down to Sunderland. We arrived just in time to opned the meeting in the usuly way. My subject was on the neccefsity, the principle of Revelation being in the Church.

After servis preparations for dinner. We took our meet with us and made it ready in the Chaple. I opned the meeting and adrefsed the Saints, showing the neccefsity of meeting oft together and to pertake of the broken bread and wine in remembrance of our Lord Jesus Christ. At the (time) of the meeting, I laid hands on Br. Wm Burnet and closed and got tea in this said place.

We have mad that araingments, that the Countery saints can bring there food with them and make it ready in the Chaple; that we, the County Saints be not burdenson to those in the town. There was nine saet down to tea for the first time.

After the same, I opned meeting in the usuly way. My subject, the 24 Chap. of Isiah. At the close of the same, we made ready for home. My wife carried the youngest child and I the firis born. The neight was very corse, blown hard. I felt very turd, standing nearly two hours on my feet, preaching and nearly four miles to carry my first born. We got safe home.

Nov. the 12 -- I received the some twenty one Shillings for six days.

Nov. the 13 -- After work, I attended a Councel meeting in the Arcaid Sunderland. I opned the same by prayer at the close of the same. I returned home.

Nov. the 14 -- Sabbath. I have attended Sunderland and enjoyed the Day by preaching three times and the cause prospring and the Saints rejoising. After the same, I returned home.

November the 19 -- Receved the some of 21 Shellings.

Nov. the 21 -- Sabbath. I have attended Sunderland. Opned the meeting in the usuly way where I teachd the Saints according to the abileyty that God gave me. At the close of the same, I got dinner in our preaching room. It is said in scripture that the labourr is worth his meet, but I came away from Hylton this morning just the same as I was going to work, carring my food in my hand. I have done this for this last three weeks that I might not be burdensom on the Saints for they had giving some hints to that effect. After dinner, Elder Wm Speekman, Elder C. Gilles who had been at Scheam harbour preaching, came at the commencement of the after noon servis. I opned in the usuly way. After the adminerstration of the Sacerment, Elder Speekmen gave us beautiful teathings. There was three officers chosen to be ordained at the conference. At the close of the same, got tea. After the same, I opned the meeting. Elder Speekman advanced the first princepls of the Gosple in such a way that the weekest capasasety could understand. At the close of the same, I returned home.

November the 24 -- After work, I attended our prayer meeting at Sunderland. I opened the same by singing and prayer and teatched the Saints to meet oft to gether so long as we were allowed to worship God and our vine and fig tree, as it were, for the time would come when we might not have such an oppertunity. I sat down. Elder Bambridge, from Newcasll, got up. He commenced by telling the Saints that I, Elder Knox, had made some great mistakes and he would put it to rights. The mistakes was that I told them that we were allowed, at the present, to worship God under our vine and fig tree, as it were, none daring to make afraid. He endeavoured to shoe the Saints my weekness by teatching me and had my name oft over and he endeavoured to shoe his supperrity over me.

I was struck at his accuser of the Brethern. I thought it a "bare fase trik" for a strang Elder to teach the President of the Branch of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints and that without permision. I thought about stoaping him, but a stranger came in and let him go on.

After the meeting was done, I told him that he had made a mistak. He said he hopped that there was no offence. I said, "no", for I did not like to shoe it on account of who was there, but I thought of making it Known to the President of the Conference, Wm Speakman, as soon as I had an oppertunity. This is not the first time that the said Elder has served me out.

November the 25 -- During the whole of this Day my mind, or rather this has been the sejected of the whisprings of the spirit of God to my mind, to go to Wouthweek after work. (about five miles) To be obeddent, for I could not rest at home, but off I went. Called at Elder E. Gillies, got his company. We arrived at one of our Sisters houses and there is all the apperence of much sucess, but, as sone as we got into the house, I seed the intarpartion of my mind. It was Elder Bambrig. He had come, no doubt to preach for we had Preachings in this said place all summer where Elder E. Gillis attended according to councel I gave. E. Gilles commcen to open the meeting. He asked me if Elder B. had to preach. I told him "no, for it was as if it were putting into my mouth to say. So, E. Gilles and my self preached and no doubt disapointed E.B. I and E. Gilles rejoised much. We felt blefsed to see the work of the Lord to prosper. We parted with E.B. at Monkwearmouth. It rained very much. I likwies parted with Eld. E. Gilles. Got home, but wet through.

November the 26 -- I have received the some of 27 Shillings for six Days work.

November the 27 -- After work I went down to Sunderland to hold a Councel meeting but did not on account of all not known.

Nov. the 28 -- Sabbeth morning. Raning very fast but attended Sunderland. Opened the meeting. Elder E. Gilles adrefsed the same. I fowllod after and closed the meeting. After dinner the

the above Elder went to Scheam Harbour. I carried on the work during the Day. We had A good Day inded. At the close of the same I got home.

Nov the 29 -- This Day the Ship wrights is all nearly idle. L Gales men is all off. The master wants the men to go to work for four shillings per Day. After work I went down to Sunderland where I meet with the Brethern in Councell. I opned the meeting and closed the same and returned home.

December the 2 -- After work I went to Southweek to preach which I did and returnd safe home.

December the 3 -- I have received 21 Shellings for six Days.

December the 4 -- This night I have attended Hylton Bencoolent Society which meets once a fortnight. I am President of this said Society, this year and it is neare at a close and it is my place to see that the affares of this said is conducted according to the rules or Law of the same. This Society is like the Sectaring Churches. They has got a load of laws but dont absrve them. This neight I have put all of them to a stand. For these last twenty years they hav going contrary to the rules of this said Society by emposing or compling each member to pay 7 S 6D for a Dinner at the close of the year, and they are going to attend the Same but I shoed them that they were doeing rong for every man had liberty to chose or refuse for it was not according to rule. I am the first President that have apposed this unjust perseding. I told them that I would not be confined to there old beatten treeck for it was a dangrous one for it is as opost to the principle of Beneovlans as the East is to the West. No bufsnefs was sattled. The Books closed. I returned home.

Do the 5 -- After dinner I went down to Sunderland. Meet with the Saints. Opned the meeting in the usuly way and closed at three o'clock, one hour before the usuly time. The reson was four Females was to be Baptised. We attended the same in the Sea and returned to the Arcaed again where we, my self and Elder E Gillies, laid hand on for the recepson of the Holy Gost. The cause is prospring. Got tea. I opned the meeting, preached and closed the same. Returnd home rejoicing in the Lord. Our Childring has been affected with the deses that is aflot just now but I have attended to the ordnance, the oil and laing on of hands which has not failed. At this time the doctors say that the Enfleny is in the air. Multudes is confined to there heads. The Church Yards is getting very fat. Shurley the Lord is laying his afflecting hands upon the people.

December the 8 -- After work I went down to Sunderland to the Prayer meeting. I opned the same. We had a good time. I closed the same and returnd home.

December the 9 -- After I went to Southweek which is five miles accompnied with Elder E Gillies, Brother R Hacky. We arrived I opned the meeting in the usuly way. The above Elder spoke a short time and I finished off which caused all our harts to rejoice. I had great liberty. Every countence bespoke rejoicing. I closed the meeting and returned home.

December the 10 -- I have received the some of 21 Shillings for six Days. The state of traid is very bad at present. Men are going in numbers and cant find employment.

December the 12 -- Sabbath. This morning I, in great hast, got breakfast and set of for the train at Monkwearmouth. I was two long for the nine o'clock train unlefs I should run all the way, which I did. I arrived just in time. The one Coach was full of Saints bound for Newcastle to attend Conference. We expected President Orson Spencer at the same, but we were disapointed.

The meeting was opend by President Elder Wm Speakman by singing and prayer. After a few remarks in regard to what we were about to attend to, a representantion of the defferant Branches was called for... the Newcastle first in good standing, the Sunderland next. The meeting was full of Saints from the defferent Branches.

I stood up to represent the Sunderland Branch which was my duty or prevledge. My back was to the Saints but the President told me to turn my face to the Saints which I did by telling them that my back would bare as good a look as my face. I look upon the Saints with my hart full of joy. Every eye seemd to be fixt on me with a smile upon there countance which gave me to understand that I had there good will. I representated this little Branch, 38 members, including two Elders, one Preast, one Teatcher, one Decon, baptised since last conference "13".

I told them that the Branch was allways good. This Branch is not amongst the least for the Saints are loving Saints. The diffirent Branchs was represented.

Elder Bartan was there. He wanted to put some things to rite but the President forbad him, so he spoak no more in the meeting all the Day, but rote all the time. He was not Clark (clerk), but Elder E. Gillies. The meeting was closed until after dinner.

A Councell meeting was held by the different officers to despenche with the money that was Colected to bring Elder Spencer, which I gave two Shillings. It was sattled to give it to President Speakman and for the defferent Branches to uphold him.

After the same, I went to my Brothers, John Knox. Got dinner.

Meet again. After the Sacrament was admensterd, Conforence bufsnefs comenced. This was put to the Saints if they was setefised with there President. The Newcastle first. The President told the Saints that the President of the different Branches wer wise and uprite men.

Elder Wandlefs, Presedent of the Newcastle Branch, he is a goot man, was aproved of by the the sow of hands to contuney there President.

My turn came next. The President told the Saints that he loved me and spoak much in my favour and that the work of the Lord would prosper in my hands. It was put to the Saints if they approved of me as there President by the shoe of hands. Every hand was up as far as they could get them. I truly felt thankfull to the Lord for his goodnefs to me in granting the desire of my hart be seeing his Kingdom built up. Yea! And altho I am one of the weekest of his servents, yet the Sunderland Branch has prospered ever since I was ordained to be there Presiding Elder of the same. I have meet maney times with the Saints and had little to encourage to me, but I allways endeavoured to chear them up and to look forward for better days.

I never have neglected to meet, but I have always endeavoured to be foremost to encourage the Saints. I have going against both wind and tide and I feel this is the way to the Celestial Kingdom of God and "O God, in the name of Jesus Christ, give me strength, fortitude and thy good Spirit to finish my course and keep the faith, that I may be counted worthy of a Celestial Glory."

After the business was all settled, the meeting closed. I got tea at my Br. John Knox. He came to the meeting with me at six o'clock. Elder Speakman addressed the meeting -- the Subject "Heaven on Earth". After the close of the same, my Br. John took me away to a cook shop where we got supper. We parted. I had to run to get the last train. I got in time. Elder Barton came to Hylton with me and stayed all night.

December the 13 - Elder Barton left and went to Sunderland.

December the 14 -- After work, I went down to Sunderland where I met in Council with the Brethren. I opened the meeting and exhorted our new officers to a sense of their duty, then our business commenced. I laid before the Council for our consideration, the best way to get the President of the Conference reported. I laid before the Council, the necessity of having the Gospel preached in Deptford as soon as possible. Things went on well. I closed the meeting and returned home.

Dec the 17 -- I have received the sum of 21 Shillings for six Days.

December the 19 -- Sabbath. This morning, as usual at Sunderland, I opened the meeting by singing and prayer. Elder Robert Gillies, President of the Shields Branch addressed us. I closed the meeting.

We met again. I opened the meeting as usual. We had a good meeting. I closed the same.

We met again. I opened the meeting as before. I called on the above Elder to address the meeting which he did in a beautiful style. Truth was so sharp that two men went out. One stood up to advocate the cause of the Catholic Church, but I told him, if he wanted to speak, we would hear him at the close of the meeting but not now, so he went out. Likewise, after the same, I closed the meeting and returned home.

December the 20 -- After work, I left Hylton for Deptford. I prayed to God that a house might be opened in this said place for to preach the Gospel in. I knew no body in this place, but I trusted to the Lord that I would be directed by his Spirit to a house that would receive me, so I came into this place and passed several houses and did not feel to ask them until I came to a little house standing in the way by itself.

My mind was on that house. I felt somewhat to rejoice at the sight of that house by itself. I rapped at the door. An old woman came out. I asked if the Master was in. She said, "no", so we both went into the house. I felt good. I told her that I wanted a house to preach the Gospel in. She said that the house was small, but if I could not get a larger, I was welcome to it. I went out in search. The first one that I came to, they were very favourable but sickness was in the house. The next one, I rapped at the door and asked if

they would allow me to preach the Gospel in their house. The Master was sitting on an old Chair, the Misterefs turned round and told me that they were not, or he was not, our Kind. He was real Irish so I turned away and went to several houses, but did (not) succeed, so I turned to my little house again that I was directed to by the Spirit of God and told him that I would except of his little house, so we agreed that tomorrow night, at half past seven o'clock, I would preach and she to get some to come and hear. So, I left him and went to Sunderland to visit the Sick, which I did, and returned home.

December the 23 -- After work, I left Hylton for Southwick. I called at our dearest sisters and found some of the Saints there. Elder E. Gillies told me that the next room there was a woman lying ailing and she believed the Gospel for he had preached to him and told him that, as she could not attend to the ordinance of Baptism, if the Lord called her hence, one would be Baptised for him. She agreed to it, and if she got better, she would do it herself.

He asked me if I would confirm him by the laying on of hands a member of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints and for the reception of the Holy Ghost. I told him that him that would be Baptised in his room and instead would have hands laid on, likewise, but I told him that I did not understand perfectly until I got some teaching on the subject for this is the first case of this kind.

So, I went into the room with the Saints. I asked the sick some questions. The above Elder and my Self laid hands on him. I prayed to God to Bless him to raise her up or take to Himself. Elder E. Gillies is Clerk of this Branch. I told him to write to President Spencer for information on this case.

After we got done speaking to the sick, we left for Southwick where we arrived. I opened the meeting. E. E. G. Spook on the fathering. I finished off and closed the meeting and returned home about twelve o'clock.

December 24 -- I have received the sum of 21 Shillings for six Days work. All trade is very dull. Many men idle.

December the 25 -- Thick dull Day with a little rain.

December the 26 -- Sabbath morning. I left Hylton for Sunderland Fasting that the Lord would help me and add to our little number such as shall be saved. Elder E. Gillies told me that the woman departed that night that we laid our hands on him. Shortly after, I opened the meeting in the usual way and called on Priest Peter to address the same and Elder E. Gillies to preach off. I closed the same.

We held Council meeting in the room of dinner. We meet again. I opened the meeting in the usual way and made a few remarks on the ordinance of the Lord's Supper. After the administration of the same a short time was occupied in bearing testimony to the work of the Lord. I closed the meeting sooner on account of Sister Marthas Funell. At the close of the meeting, I sold my Hymn Book to a stranger. I, likewise, anointed and laid hands on a sister for the healing of the sick and went up to Sister Marthas funeral. The Saints were

most all there. We Sung a hymn in the House "Weep Not for Me Zion" and my place was to walk before the corps. The above woman to be Burried at the same time they to walk first. I acted the part of under taker. We got to the graves after the service or the prayers of the Clargy was read. They were covered up for the graves was both together.

I called the Saints together and we Sung over the graves "Weep Not for Me Zion". Many a tear ful. It was solom indeed. We returnd in retation to the house where tea was prepared for the hold company. I felt much to see all the saints surrounding the table of our sister amifsing. I feel myself as there Shepard and one of the flock taken from us. After tea was over, severel Hymn were sung.

The time came to meet again. I opnd the meeting in the usuly way and called on Preist F. Hacky to adrefs the congration for the first time. He spoke about twenty minits on the first principles and laid them down very plain. I fineshed off and the close of the meeting Thomas Dales asked me to Baptise him to morrow neight. I agreed to the same and returned home.

December the 27 -- After work I went to Sunderland and called at Mfs Colonwood's where I had to meet Thomas Dales. Elisabeth Colonwood, Marthas Sister, was wating for me to come down to be Baptis with Mr. Dales. He did not come. Therefore, we went down to the sea accompynd with the Saints. The Sea was very rough where we have Baptised before. I thought it wisdom to return until it was more favourable wether for it was very dark.

We was returning and was haeled by Sister Stabler and Thomas Dales for he was detained being mait of a vessel and had to attend to her. They both felt very ancous to be Baptised. We went down to the Sea again and found a sutable place, being sheltered by the Cocks and the Peare. We Sung. I Baptised Thomas Dales and Elisabeth Colonwood. We returned to Sisters Stablers and laid hand on for the reception of the Holy Ghost.

I felt sorrfully at the tea after. Sister Martha was Burried but now I rejoice that she was going home or falling asleep for here is her sister Burried in Baptism, the members made up and one over. I got home about twelve o'clock P.M.

December the 28 -- After work I went down to Deptford to fulfill my apointment. I arrived but no boud came. I asked the old if she would invite the people again and would give them another oppertunity. She agreed to it. I left and went down to Sunderland and called at Sister Collonwoods and had a bit chat with them and Elder E. Gillies accompynd me out of the town. We parted and I returned home.

December 31 - I have received the some of Seventeen shillings and sixpence for Five Days.

January the 1 -- 1848 -- This morning at ten o'clock I, being President of the Hylton Benevolent Society, I meet with the Secretery to put the money to rite to get it divided to each member and the dinner was one the tables at one o'clock. It was my place to ask a blefsing on the same. There was a good maney Methodest at the Dinner. It was a good one. 50 persons sat down to the same. I stood up and called order. It was atttered to. The abve are a people or one of them generly asked a blefsing and and returnd thanks at the same and after Dinner was over along thanks over again. (I am writing these words just as he wrote them and leave it up to each reader to figure out what he means.) I told them that we as a people, The Latterday Saints, when we asked a blefsing upon food, we returnd thanks at the same time and, if they were not setifyied with this way, they could doe there own.

I asked a Blefsing and got a good dinner. After the same, some of them got an old Seerous Methodist to return thanks, but some would not heare him for they said that the President had done it the rite way. The old man had it mos to himself.

We shared 23 Shillings and too pence half penny. Each paid 1S 6D for the Dinner, 1S interince and 1S 1¹/₂D for a meeting ? 6D 483D got beside sellery. This came in very well. I did not feel enclind to stand an officer any more except in the Kingdom of God. About five o'clock P.M., the bufsnefs was all sattled. I delivered up my Presdence to M Stafford and returned home. Got tea and set off for burn Hall. The neight was dark. The roads bad. I arrived. Got suppr.

Januery the 2 -- 1848 --- Sabbeth morning. After dinner, I was accompnied by my Br-in-law Wm Tweddle down to Scheam Harbour. The roads very bad. We arrived the the House of Brother Thomas Dales. After a little conversation he gave me some, or a piece of, potery he had made on the Death of sister Martha Collonwood. He was setting in his cabin while he rote the same.

We had a walk along the Sea Shore to see if we could find a sutbale place for Baptism. The Sea was rough. After the same, we got tea in the said Brothers house about six o'clock P.M. A few pepol came in. I opned our meeting by singing and prayer. After a lengthey discorce I closed the meeting and went down to the Sea. It was raining and very dark but Br Thomas Dales brought a Ship Lantran.

We expected to find a large hole amongst the Rocks but it was do dark Br Dales sought all the holes by plungin him self into them. I never seed a man manefest so much willingness in my life. Shuerly the Blefsing of heaving will rest upon him for his good deads. At last the candle went out. It faired and was more comfortable.

I thought that we were going to be defsapointed but Br Dales wife said that she Knew of a place. We went to the same and B Dales just plugged into the hole and found it all over, a better pace could not be got and Br Dales stood by me in the water until I Baptised his wifes Brother and his wife and returned to his house again where I laid Hands on them and confirmed them members of the Church Jesus Christ of Latter Saints.

He wanted me to stop all neight. I would if it had not been my Brother-in-law. He told us that we should not go out of his house

until we got supper. We sat down to the sam. I told him to act scrib to me for I wanted his wife Brother name the place where Born and when, like his wives, and I will git them recorded in Church Book. It was attended to. We took leave of them by bidding them good nieght and made for Burn Hall. We got to this place about eleven o'clock P.M. up to the Knees with crarts. (This word "crarts" is written very clearly. I don't know what he means) I thought about coming home to Hylton but I was persuaded to stope all neight which I (did).

Janury the 4 -- After work, I went down to Deptford but no boady came to hear me. This is the third time and no bod turned out. I don't feel to go aney more for a time. I visited at Sunderland and returnd home.

Janury 6 -- After work I went to Southweek and Preached in a Sisters house. We had a good meeting. After the Same I returned hom.

Janury the 7 -- I have receved the Some of fifteen Shillings and nine pence for four Days and half.

Janury the 8 -- After work I attended a Councell meeting in the Arcaid Sunderland. After I retternd home.

Janery the 9 -- Sabbeth. This morning after brickfast I left my famly in the care of my Heavenly Father and went to Sunderland where I met with the Saints. I opned the meeting as usuly and called upon Priest Petrie and Priest Hacky to addres the Congregation which they did. After the Same, I closed the meeting.

Got dinner at Tetcher Robert Hacky. At two o'clock P.M. meet again. I opned the meeting. I told the Saints that we would have a good meeting, so we had. After the same, I got tea at the above Brothurs. At six P.M. I opned the meeting in the usuly. I spoke on the falling away and the restoration of the Gosple for both the levin and Dead. A tentiv congration, indeed. I belevie good will be the result. I closed the same and returnd home.

Janury the 11 -- After work I went dow to Sunderland and accompnyed down to the Sea By the Saints to attend to Baptism. A beautifully neight. We sung a Hymn and prayed at the water side. I re Baptised Robert Hacky, likewise Martha Colonwood. Not re Baptised the Mother of Sister Martha that died. After the same, we went to thehouse of Br Stablers and confirmed them. I returnd Safe home.

Janury the 13 -- After work I went to Southweek accompnyed by the Saints from Sunderland. We arrived at Sister Burtons House. I opned the meeting and called upon Preiest Hacky and Elder E Gillies to adrefs the meeting, which they did. I finished of. We had a good meeting. I returnd home safe.

Janery 14 -- I received the some of 21 Shillings for six Days.

Janunery the 16 -- Sabbeth morning. I told my wife that I had dremt that the Saints in Sunderland was in great confusion. I had to doe with it, likewise, President Wm Speekman, so I told my wife

I would go down to Sunderland and see.

I left my femely in care of my heavnly Father this morning about eight o'clock. I left Hylton and arrived in Sunderland at Sisters Colonwoods where Elder E. Gillies lodges. I had a little conversation with him. He told me he had received a letter from President Wm Speekman stating that he understood that Elder Barton was amongst us, or coming, but we was to beware for his office and authority was taking from him. I told my dream in Sisters Colonwoods house. I left Elder E. Gillies in charge of the Church and left Sunderland for Scheam Harbour where I arrived about twelve o'clock at the House of Br T Dales. I got dinner after the same.

The first saints came to gether and brought strangers with them. I opned the meeting in the usuly way and Preached the Gosple according to the abilety that God hath giving me and administerd the Lords Supper. Our meeting was small but good. I closed the meeting and asked a young man if he would be Baptised. He said "yes" detectly. Sister Bowman had done what lay in hir pour to teatch him the principles but yet there was something lacking. He delared that he never had hard the like before and that he was perfectly setify and, after tea, Br Bowman accompynd us down to the Sea.

We Knelt down on the Chanell alonside of the great German Bison and a Blefsing and pertection. We asked from our Heavenly Father. After the same, I Baptised Thomas Meed, aged 26 years, a Marner.

We got back just in time. The Congration had assembled. I opned the meeting by singing "come Humble Sinner in wose Brist the Gosple word is down" and prayer. Atthe concluding I confirmed Thomas Meed by the laying on of hands a Member of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints and Closed the meeting. Got Supper and left about nine o'clock P.M. Got to Sunderland and called at Sisters Collonwoods. As soon as I came into the House the sisters told me that they did not know what to think about there meeting to day. It was not plesnt to be in for Br Barton he told me that he said an evil Spirit in the meeting. The letter was true that Presedent Wm Speekman sent. It just came in time.

In the morning I charged Elder E Gillies that if Barton came to demand his liscence, which he did, but he had none. E. Gillies told me that the Saints collected, or he had collected, money to help B Barton home. I gave him what I could Spare. I have hard the fullifilment of my Dream and returnd home.

Janury the 18 -- After work I left Hylton about six o'clock P.M. Called at Sunderland and was accompynd to Southweek by Teatcher Robert Hacky where we, with the Saints in Sisters Bartons House, held a prayer meeting for the first time. I opned the Same. It was good. After the Same I returnd home.

Janury the 19 -- After work I left home and arrived at Sunderland and called at Sisters Colonwoods where three more of hir femely is to be Baptised. All things was in readynefs. Therefore, we went to attend to the great law of adobson. (This word "adobson" was written very clearly. I think he means "absolution") accompynd down to the Sea by the Saints. I gave out a Hymn "Jesus Mighty King in Zion Thou Alone Our Guid Sall Be", and prayed after the same.

I Baptised, or emersed, Georgs Hodurn, the Husband of hir that I visited on December the 23, 1847, likewise Charles Collonwood, aged about nineteen years, likewise, Cathrin Collonwood and Christan Collonwood. The neight very frosty. The Death of Sister Marthas has had a good affect. We meet in the Arcaid where we attended to the doctrine of laing on of hands. After all was done, I returnd home rejoicing in the lord.

January the 21 -- I have received of 21 Shillings for six Days.

Janeary the 23 -- Sabbeth. This morning I meet with the Saints at Sunderland. I opned the meeting as usuly and called on Preist F. Hacky to adrefs the congration. I finished and closed the meeting. Got dinner with the Mure Brother. Meet again as usual. After the adminustration of the bread and wine, Sister Colonwood was seessed with sever illnefs. I laid hands on hir. She went out of the meeting and stood on the Stare head, two Sisters holding hir. She appeared to be getting worse. I went out and laid hands on again. The disease was rebucked and she walked into the meeting after me, quit well. This was not done in a corner, but before the congration. It wasdone by the power of God and not by the power of man. Closed the meeting. Got tea at Br Hackys. Meet again at six o'clock. I opned the meeting as usuly and preached the Gosple to a good congration. Closed the meeting and returnd home.

January the 28 -- I have received the Some of 21 Shillings for Six days work.

January the 30 -- Sabbeth morning. I arrived at Sunderland and delivered out about tharty envatations statting the defferent doctring of the Church. After the same, I got into the meeting and opned the Same by Singing and prayer. I just got started to speak when President Wm Speekman into the meeting. I gave way for him and he gave us teatching. After the Same, I closed the meeting.

Meet again. I opned the meeting and after the Sacermant was administered the President gave us beautiful teatchings and closed the meeting. I was envited to break my fast with Preist Foster Hacky. I went. This is the close of our Fast for I have fasted from yesterday at five o'clock PM to five this day PM and most of the Saints, that God might blefs us and that maney more might be added to our number shuch as shall be saved. Afr tea, we meet again. President Wm Speekman opned the meeting and closed the Same. I got home about twelve o'clock PM.

January the 31 -- (He has started to spell January right) After dinner, I laid hands on my wife and prayed to God for hir that she might be safe delevered. I went to work again. I returnd and found hir safe deleavourd.... a girl, but Dead born and had been for about a month. I got tea and went back again and made a Coffin, 17 inches long, 5 inches Broad at the head, six at the shoulder, 3 at the feet, 3 inches depth.

February the 4 -- I have received the (sum) of 23 Shillings & 7³/₄D for Six days and three quartr.

February the 6 -- Sabbath. I have attended Sunderland and I Baptised and confirmed the same by the laing on of hands. Got dinner and tea at Br Robert Hacky and spent the Day as usuly and returnd home.

February the 10 -- After work I went to Southweek and preached, accompynd by some of the Saints from Sunderland. After the same, got safe home.

February the 11 -- Received the some of 21S for Six Days.

Febury the 12 -- Sabbath. Attended Sunderland as usual. After the none meeting I Baptised he left blank Hall and confirmed the same. At evning I adrafsed a good congration. Got dinner and tea. Br R Hackys returnd safe hom.

February the 16 -- After work, I attended the Sunderland prayer meeting.

Do the 17 -- After work, I went to Southweek and preached and retrnd safe home.

Do the 18 -- I have received the Some of 23S and 7 $\frac{1}{2}$ D for Six Days & three quarters.

Do the 19 -- After work, I meet with the Brethern in our place of worship in the Arcade, Sunderland and sat in Concell with them and returnd Safe home after walking the 8 miles.

February the 20 -- After dinner I and my wife went to Sunderland and meet with the Saints, President Wm Speakman being with us. Our meeting was good. We got tea at Br R Hackys. The above adressed a full meeting to the intire setisfaction of all present. The subject showing the unscriptuler doctrin of everlastin punishment with an end. At the conclusion of the same, we returned safe home.

February the 21 -- The nurse left us. She had two shillings a week and her meet. My wife is nurs herself now and doing well.

Do the 22 -- After work, I went to Southweek, five miles, there to head a prayer meeting and give instructings being led to doe the same and returnd home ten miles. Our Branch of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints now numbers 49.

February the 25 -- Received the some of 21 Shillings for six days.

Do the 26 -- This morning rains fast with wind. I left Hylton for Newcastle then to the Bankrufstic Court (He means "Bankruptcy") Got setteld to pay four Shilling a month to the said Court. The same that is mentioned on page 96. I payed from one to two Shilling a week regular and reduced it to 3..11..6 $\frac{1}{2}$ D when he became a Bankrupt as is the facion now a Days.

I visited the Saints and hearing the report concerning france that the French had broken out a reveloisn, many Killed and wounded. Likewise, the King had to fly for his life. These are the signs of the times. I returnd safe home.

February the 27 -- I attended Sunderland as usual. Got dinner and tea at Br R Hacyk (I think this is the name he has written before and spelled Hacky) and Preached to a tentiv congration and returnd home.

February the 29 -- After work I went to Southweek and taut the Saints to be on guard becaus the Devil wanted to be among us. My resons for this was a few neights ago as sone as I had laid my head down to sleep I felt my self amongst the Saints and casting out Devils. I awoke and found my self Just as if I was fighting. I awoke my wife and told hir to put forth her hand and feel what posetion I was in with both of my arms stretched out, my fists clenched. The Saints thought a strange tetching, no doubt. After the Same, I returnd home.

March the 3 -- Received the some of 18S & 4^{sh}D for five Days and $\frac{1}{4}$.

March the 4 -- I attended a councel meeting at Sunderland. The tetching that I gave at Southweek on the 29 was seasonable. At the above place, they are all females and apprently the weekest side of our army. His old Satan majesty has tried and succeeded so far, but we are determand to lay a stumbling block in his way that the work of the Lord be not stoped. This was the most of our bufsnefs. I closed the meeting and bought a fring Prawn (He must mean "fried Prawn") for on and six pence in the market and returnd home.

March the 5 -- I have attended Sunderland and opned the meeting and called on Priest John Gillies to adrefs the same. I finished of. Got dinner at Foster Hackys and tea and Preached to a tentiv congration. The saints felt the power of the same and rejoiced. My subject was it was in the days of Noah & I returnd safe home.

March the 7 -- After work, I went to Southweek to leead or head the prayer meeting, but when the Saints Knew that it was me, they desired me to Preach to them. The room was filled. I opned the meeting by prayer and Singing the Hymn on Page 297. I felt to rejoice while Preaching. At the close of the meeting we, my self and Foster Hacky Priest, attended to what was pafsed in the Councill meeting on March the 4.

March the 9 -- After work I attended Southweek feeling ancious to rool on the work.

March the 10 -- Received the some of 21 Sh for Six Days.

March the 11 -- Sabbeth. Rains fast with strong wind. I attended Sunderland after dinner. Opned the meeting in the usuly form. Elder E. Gillies was married this morning at Bishop Wearmouth Church and he desired me to marrie them by the authority of the holy Priesthood and undoe the work of man. This is the first that I have performed. It a laffable one. I was, as the saying is, rooth and ready and pronounced them husband and wife. Elder Speekman, being present, he gave them and all teachings setteble and seasonabl. He, likewise, read the General Epistle from the council of the twelve Apostles.

After the sam, we pertook of the bread and wine. Closed the meeting. Got tea at Sisters Madderons. The above preached his subject and these signs shall follow them that beleve & at the close of the meeting I returnd home.

March the 12 -- Arly (he means "early") this morning my wife awoke me and told me that she had been singing in her sleep, "Come Gather Up for Zion Ye Saints Through the Land" and this was somthing fresh for she sung none while awake this Day. Mr. Lawson Gales Ship Builders, Hylton, has put six of his apprentices to Durham for refusing to work. The spirit of contention gains ground. I was asked by a clap leader what I thought of the signs of the times. He said they looked like what is mentioned in scripture.

March the 13 -- My wife awoke me and told me that she had been at Council Bluffs but, alas, I found her in bed along side of my self still in Bablon.

March the 15 -- Eight more of Mr. L Gales apprentis is taken to jaol. The Spirit of Revelution is in the young Generation. People, in generel, are discetified and looking for somthing to take place shortly. After Six o'clock I attended Sunderland prayer meeting and taut the Saints, as I was lead. Held a Councel meeting at the concluson and returnd home.

March the 17 -- I have received the some of 21 Shilling for Six Days and, in order to endeavour to help to build up the Kingdon of God, I have attended to my busnefs that is delevering and changing O.Spencers letters in the shape of tracks. I told Sister Elesbeth Colonwood that I wanted to help out hir, but she would have to work for it. She agreed to it. It was to go and deleavour out O. Spencers letters in the shape of tracks in Sunderland with an invation plasterd on the back in side. I purched the same and gave hir. I delever them in Hylton and she delevs them in Sunderland.

March the 19 -- I left Hylton this morning being Sabbeth about nine o'clock. Got to Sunderland. Visited the Saints. Got some Stars and books. Made the best of my way to Scheam Harbour. The wether gloomey. The wind from the South East or something near the same. I arrived at the House of Br Thomas Dales. Got dinner and held our Sacermnt meeting. After tea I preached to a small congrotation and laid hands on Br. Johny Bowman. At the close, I got supper and took the road for home about half past eight o'clock PM.

A course neight, raining and blowing frisk. This road is very dreary having to pafs through Riop dean about half way between Scheam and Sunderland. (I am not sure about the word "Riop". It could be Rioss)

About nine o'clock, it being about full moon, but it became that dark that I scharce could find or see my way. The rain pourd down upon me. I thought that there was somthing about to take place. The neight was awful dark. I arrived at Sunderland. Called at Sisters Masons where I found a few of the Saints together. They told me that the Moon had been in the Eclips. That was the darknefs. I left and got home about half past eleven weat and tird. The distance is about eleven miles making twenty two miles.

March the 23 -- This Day my wife has commenced to dispose of our furneture. Sold three chares at two and six pence each. Seven Shillings and six pence for the three, likewise a matares three Shillings. The news went through the vilige like wild fire that Knox was going to the Holy land. This has caused a little excitment in the minds of people. The reson for us selling off so soon is to try to rais as much as pofsable beleving that things will grow worce for we intend to go to Zion in September, hearing of Kings being hureld from there throns sewing the spirit of desctruction and revelution pofsining the minds of the people generely the public. News Papers teaming with revelutionary strif. There appears to be the beginning of sorrows but yet my hart rejoices in the midst of all these things beleving that we will git to Mount Zion. My wife is very throug, trying to make good bargans. After work I went to Southweek where I anointed a Sisters brist and Preached to a good congration and returnd home.

March the 24 -- My wife has sold the Kitchen table for five Shillings, a Pail for one shilling. This silling-off is Preaching the Gosple to the people. I have received the som of twenty one Shillings for six Days.

March the 26 - Sabbeth. As usuly, attended to my post and after servis got dinner at Elder E. Gillies. Meet again. I opend the meeting. Taut the Saints the impotence of the table of the Lord. Likewise, to gather nufs (togetherness) for Zion. I told them that I had set them the example. It was a very simple one... just to sell all off as sone as they could get marchents. Every countince beemed with joy.

After the Bred and wine was adminsted, I asked Br. Thomas Dales if he was willing to be ordaind to the office of Priest for according to order he was chosen. He excepted the office. The above Brother Dales is a Sea faring man and likely to doe much good. This is goot after noon of rejoicing. I got tea at Br Peteres. He is a sailor and holds the office of Priest and likely to do good. Meet again and I Preached to a good congration and expects the seed to grow. Got safe home.

March the 30 -- After work I went to Southweek and Preached and returned home, it being a very wet and dark neight. The Saints there puts great confidence in me. I feel great liberty to Preach to them and those whom they bring. We meet this neight in Sisters Hall's house. We meet sometimes in one house and then in another just as the Sisters agree amongst themselves. At half past eleven o'clock PM I have landed.

March the 31 -- Our furneter yet unsold. We thought by this tim all our furneture would have been sold. For the first few Days the people came and burgend but also, the one thing needful was awanting for there is but few men at work ... the Flour two shillings per stone, the Butcher meet seven pence half penny or Eight pence per pound, Potatahs one shillings and four pence per Peck. Besides all this, the peoples harts is failling them for fear it is expected a revelution if the peoples Chartes is not granted. The Petetions is getting filled with signetuers in every town and vilage this night. I have received the some of 21 shillings for six Days.

April the 1 -- After work I have delevered and changed 0 Spencers letters. I do this once a week and intend as long as I remain in Hylton that I may clear my garments of the Blood of this people. This is Setterday neight. I have been very bufsey during the week. I made two, four foot stools after work, beside attending to preach for I thought we would need them in the room of Chares. We have got three.

April the 2 -- Sabbeth morning. Fine wether. I attended Sunderland. Opnd the meeting and called on Priest Petree and Elder E Gillies to adrefs the congration which was done. I closed the meeting. Got dinner at Teatcher Hackys. After servis again, got tea at Sister Mattinsons. After the same, I preached to attentive congration and returnd home.

April the 3 -- After work I went to Sunderland and Baptised Robert Mattinson, likewise, Ralph Wheedker and re Baptised Elder E. Gillies. Confirmed the same in the house of Br John Statlers. At the same time, confirmed Preist Foster Hacky. He was re Baptised. Got supper with Capten Robert Mattenson and returned home at twelve o'clock very tird.

April the 6 -- After work I have mad a four legd stool. My wife has bargned for the dest Bed. He must mean "best bed" but it is definitely written "Dest".

April the 7 -- I have received the som of 21 Shillings for six Day. After work hours, made a four legd stool. The Dest Bed is sold for one pound seventeen and Six pence and taken away.

April the 8 -- After work I went down to Sunderland but did not acomplish my object. It was to hold a Councel meeting but the officers was not aware of it and could not be found in time, so I returned home.

April the 9 -- Sabbeth morning. I intended to preach in Hylton this morning but the wind was from the North East which rendered or was too cold for out dores preaching. After dinner, I went down to Sunderland. Meet with the Saints. President Elder Wm Speekman was present. I opend the meeting in the usuly way. The Above Elder gave us beautiful teatchings. I got tea at Priest Peterees. The above Elder preached to a full house. Good attention. At the close of the same, we laid our hands upon a few Sick Sisters, four of them. I got safe home.

April the 10 -- This Day the people is very anious to Know how they that carryes in the Sharter comes on. This is all the talk. I hard this Day, a fulfilment of the words of the Apostle Paul to Timothy, "They shall turn away from the truth and preach fables." Two members of the primitive Methodest speaking of there preacher said it was no use for a man to get into the pulpot to preach nonsense gecees work and opening I over hard them.

April the 11 -- News from London. The Charts Bill is taken into the house in peace.

April the 12 -- I have finished making four legd stools having seven. Mr. John Dawson died to Day. After work I have shifted and deleuvoured 0 Spencers letters.

April the 14 -- Received the som of 21 Shilling for Six Day work. After the same, I went down to Sunderland. Held a Council meeting at the house of Elder E. Gillies.

April the 16 -- Palm Sunday. I went down to Sunderland. Opnd the meeting and delevered a decourse on the getherine. After the same, I got dinner at Priest Peteries. Meet again and, before the adminestration of the bread and wine, I spoke on the gethring, according to the abileyty that God gave me, and the importence of the tabl of the Lord. Got tea at Sisters Colonwoods.

Meet again in the usuly way. Elder E. Gillies delevered a lecture on the first principle and I followed on the same subject and closed the meeting and returned home and at twelve o'clock P.M. I went to asist at the Church yard to open Mr. John Dawsons vault. It rained very fast. It was opned in or about one hour. The reason that we went at that time was to let the bad smell out because we had to put a wood floor upon a tear of coffins.

We went into the vault about four o'clock A.M. It was desagreeable to work upon rootnefs (rotteness) and dead men's bones. We got it finished about eight o'clock and about twelve and one o'clock we received Mr. John Dawson in three Coffins -- the firs lead, the second a Shals, the third English Oak French polished -- the weight about tharty stone. His age 87 years. The profsing was large for all the men that belongs to his work was there. When all was done, we got our dinners at the Masters house, this being April the 17.

The 18 -- I went to Southweek after work and anointed Sisters Halls bust.

April the 19 -- After work I deleuvoured out 0. Spencer letters.

April the 21 -- Received 24S 6D for seven Days.

the 22 - After work, I read the Stars, brothers Buluks letter, which caused our harts to rejoice insmuch that my Self and wife and two childring Knult down and returnd thank to our heavenly Father for the good news glad tideng.

April the 23 - Sabbeth morning. The wind from the North East. I left Hylton as usuly for Sunderland. Meet as usuly. Got dinner at Sisters Collonwood. Meet again and had a good meeting. After the, I Baptised in the Scea the fowlling persons: Edward Frances, Melam Guast & Marget Cald. Got tea at Br Mattensons. Meet again and, when I was done Preaching, I confirmed these two members of the Church of Jesus Chris of Latter Day Saints and returnd safe home.

April the 24 -- I have halloday for Easter Monday. This Day the Shipwrights wages is reduced to four Shilling and Six pence per day. The traid very bad. Few employed. I left Hylton this after none about three o'clock for Sunderland where I delevered invitations to a whole street called defsford road.

When I got throu I called upon Sister Mary Ann Mason, being informed by Sister Elesabeth Collonwood last Sabbeth Neight, that on the 16, Palm Sunday, at the Sacermment meeting, while I was offciating in my office, see page 177, speeking about Mount Zion, Sister Martha Collonwood that died, see page 148, that she was standing at my left hand, and Sister Mary Ann saw her. To asertain this, I fealt ancous, for while she lived she proved faithful even to death and all the Saints that Knew hir can testify the same. They were close companions and loved each other ---- yeas, and at death Mary Ann adminestared comfort to hir. There appeared to be more affection between Martha and Mary Ann than a mear sister, for it was made manefast.

I got tea at Sister Masons. After the same I asked Sister Mary Ann the truth of the same. Mary Ann, her own words, "I was sitting thinking upon your teatchings, my head hanging down a little and I just looked around the room and at you, or straght before me, and, all of a sudent I thought, or amagent that Sister Martha was standing along side of you, the same drefs that she was burried in. She was drefsed in white, even hir shes on. I took that much notis that I beleved I seed the small ribbon in hir Cap. I took my eyes of. I lost the sight and felt some what suprised. After, I have tried to beleve that I amagent it by trying to amagen hir back again but cannot. Whether it was amagnation or not I cannot tell. I was not thinking about hir at the time but on your teachings."

This is the testemoney of Mary Ann and I beleve hir for she is a kind, affcenet Sister.

April 25 -- After work I have spent the neight delevering and Shifting O. Spencers Letters.

Do the 26 -- This morning about six o'clock going to work eating a peice of brown brid, I hard the voice of the CooKcooa, the wind from about the North East. During this day, could with shours of hail.

April the 28 -- This Day while at work, my Master weighed me --- eleven Stone and a half. I have not exceded eleven Stone this seven years before. Its not with high leaving for I never lived upon porrer meet than I have this winter but I beleve that my Heavenly Father has blefsed every bit that we have eating. The reason, to pay every one there own. My hight, five feet nine inches and eleven Stone and a half weight. Traid is getting worse. The Potters is stinted to fifteen Shillings a week and fears that they will be worse. I have recieved the some fourteen Shilling for four days.

April the 29 -- After work I went down to Sunderland. Meet in Councel with the Brethern the Preisthood.

April the 30 -- Sabbeth. Attended my post at Sunderland. Elder E. Gillies Preached. I got dinner with him and tea with B R Hacky and preached to a good congation.

May the 3 -- After work I meet with the Saints at Sunderland.

Do the 4 -- After work I went to Southweek and Preached to a good congation.

Do the 5 -- Received the some of 21 Shilling for Six Days. Thing is getting worse. The Potters is reduced to ten Shilling a week.

Do the 6 -- We have sold three chares for twelve shillings, mehogney table ten shillings, a stool six pence, fire irons five shillings, small schare fifteen pence.

May the 7 -- Sabbeth. This morning at half past nine I took my stand in a very sutable place. The congration drew up. I opned the meeting by singin the first Hymn. I had to sing it my self altho I was surrounded by those who could sing but there charity would not extend as far to all them to help me. This place, Hylton, is full of Methodism and darknefs.

I continued my discourse one hour and half, the people very attentive, so I preached the Gosple according to my ability and bore a faithful testimoney amongst a people that I am personly acquainted with.

After diner I meet with the Saints at Sunderland and had a good meeting. Got tea at Br Mattinsons and went to the Moor. There was some preachers standing about wating for a Congration to draw up. This place is frequanted, or as I may tarm, a Chaple for all kinds.

Seeing then a good oppertunity, a Chare was got. I mounted the same, gave out the first Hymn. These priests seemed to be disapointed, the place taken from them and People coming from all quarters. My subject, "As it was in the Days of Noah", and these Priests began to shuffel, takin nots, writing down before the Congration my discourse, or the heads of it.

The people gave great attention to my teatchings. I felt quite exhausted for I got to it very freely and this being the second time out in the open air. I spoke reather two much this morning in Hylton. Likness, at the sacrmant meeting, the priests got quite uneasy. After three quarters of an hour I came to a close. Brother Peteree was standing along side of me. I called upon him to take my stand but those herlings could not stand aney longer, but rushed up to me, demanded there questings to be answered. I answered one but that did not sufice them.

There questins was what would become of all the good people from the Days of the Apostles & I told them that where there was no law, there was no transgrson and God would deal with them as he did with the people from the Days of Malachi up to the time of our savior.

They made another Shiffil hear, for they said that was not what they wanted, "Where did Jo Smith get the revlation?" I told them in America. By this time, the people took up the cudgles ("cudgel" means club) and told those Hereling that they were doing rong. A few word was changed amongst the standers-by and it being time for us to got to the Arcade, I invited the people and closed the meeting by prayer. And these herling declared that they would not interfur with what I had teatched.

I opned the meeting in our place of worship and called on Elder E. Gillies and he delevered a benefical subject. After the close, I returnd safe home.

May 8 -- Thing as bad as ever on the Continet -- wars. Hamburgh blocked up by the enemy. Truly mens harts is failling them for fear, for there is nothing but poverty. The Saints is suffering for the want of employment in Sunderland.

May the 9 -- After work I delevered and and shifted O. Spencers letters.

May the 10 -- I left of work at four o'clock P.M. Got tea and of to Sunderland. Called at some of the Saints houses. Got Preist F. Hackey and Teacher R. Hackey and to the moor again. I gave out the Hymn on the 54 page and prayed. By this time, the people flocked around us and A Herling preist standing at my left hand appeartly to be quit uneasy.

I took for my starting point a few of the first varces of the 24 Chap of Isaiah. I had libirty and spoke to the point. I had every encouregement from the people but the poor Hirling priest got his Bible opned, turned down a great maney leaves. At last, he wanted to stope me and I presued my course. I felt rather tired and called on Brother Foster Hacky. Hear, he wanted to comence to rail against us but would not alow him. They told him that he was on the stand first and had most right to the same, so Br Foster got will on the Herling priest, still prancing about full of his Father, the Devil.

Br. Foster got done and I comenced again for a short time and, as our prayer meeting comenced at eight o'clock, it being time, I envited the people to the same and closed the meeting by prayer. At the same, our oposer mounted upon a chare ready for a start, a speetle of anger to the whoole afsembly. I went to the Arcade. Left Elder E. Gilles and Teacher Hacky with some other Saints.

I opend the prayer meeting and after the close of the Same, I went to the Moor accompynd by a few of the Saints. The Precher that I left, the opposer, we found him amongst a croud of people. During the time that I was at the prayer meeting he, the acuser, comenced to rail against Jo Smith and his fowellers, but he was put to shame by a man that I Know not. My course is to Preach the Gosple beleving that the Lord will stand by me and even confound all our opposers. Yea, even by desentrested, or out of the congration. I got safe home about twelve o'clock, time, indeed, for bed.

May the 12 -- I have received the some of 21 Shillings for six Days.

May the 14 -- Sabbeth morning. I took my stand about half past nine A.M. Opend the meeting by singing and prayer. I had to sing it by my self. The people is very unchartabl in Hylton, but it is true, a Prophet is not without honour save in his own country.

I preached the Ghosples according to the ability that God gave me and I feel that I have read my garments of the blood of this people and can testify to the same, and yet, I am still willing to try them at every opportunity. I have tried them above four years without any success.

I got dinner with my own family and committed them to the care of my Heavenly Father and took the road for Sunderland. I arrived in time for the meeting. I opened the meeting in the usual way and gave some teaching to the point and partook of the bread and wine and called upon the Saints to act their part and we would have a good meeting. And, we had a good meeting, indeed, for after two or three had borne testimony I felt to speak in Tongues and every one felt and did rejoice. The interpretation, yes, was glorious. My soul did rejoice in the Lord. This meeting will long be remembered.

I consecrated oil and blessed Sister Halls Child. I got tea at Br R. Hackys. After the same, I was desired by a man who had tried the many Doctors and not like to get better of the disease upon the liver. He said he had faith to be healed through the ordinance of laying on of (hands) and oil.

I administered oil in the name of Jesus. Laid my hands upon him to be according to his faith. After this, we went down to the Moor and our old opposer was waiting on us. We took our stand between two Preachers. We sung a Hymn and prayed. I took for a starting point, "Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ and Thou Shalt be Saved", and the congregations nearly left the other preachers and came to us. The accusers of the Brethren standing at my right hand rising.

I spoke about half an hour and called upon Elder E. Gillies, this poor infatuated creature rising all the time. About six o'clock above Elder came to a close. I mounted the Chair again. By this time, the accuser was mounted upon another Chair close to me that I could teach him.

I invited the people to the Arcade and told that we had some Books for sale and that I would close the meeting by prayer. The accuser could not govern himself any longer. He declared before this great congregation that there was to be no prayers heard to night. I turned to him, quite mild, and said, "Will a man of God," or something like, "hinder prayer?"

The people appeared to be fired by the Spirit of God. In our behalf the people cried, "down with him." I closed the meeting by prayer and proved him to be a false prophet.

I left the moor for the Arcade, opened the meeting and called upon Priest Peterie and F. Hacky, Priest, to address the congregation. After the same, I past a few remarks and closed the meeting. Elder E. Gillies stopped and heard the accuser. He came out with nothing but this. He said Jo Smith was killed just two years since heading his army and a man stood up and declared that he was not a Mormon but he loved truth and he would prove that what had been advanced was false -- that Joseph Smith was put to death and his Brother Hiram, three years since. He was very correct and very pointed and acted the part of a Saint and may God bless him, for I don't know him. I returned home rejoicing in the Lord.

May the 17 -- After work I went down to Sunderland to preach upon the Moor. When I came to the place, it was taken up by our opposer. I hard him and spoke a little. After great oppsion, I returnd home.

May the 18 -- After a tide work at a keel boat, I went down to the Moor again. Bot Brother Hacky. We got the stand first. A chare was got. I mounted the same, comenced by singing and prayer. The people drew up. My opposer drew up, likewise. He stood close to me but got very unpacent. He got a chare and mounted the same, a speetile to a great congration. He endeavoured to stoap me but the people was on my side. We were that close that I could tutch him. He commenced after railing against me and the Church. I left the Moor about nine o'clock P.M. very wery and tird. Got safe home.

Do the 19 -- Received the some of 21 Shilling for six days.

Do the 20 -- After work, I went down to Sunderland and meet in Councel with the Brethern.

May the 21 -- Sabbath. After dinner, myself, wife and children went down to Sunderland. After the meeting, we went to Sister Masons. Got tea and anointed Br Richerds eye and administerd oil and laid on hand upon Mother Mason. After this, Br F Hacky and myself and a few more of the Saints, went to the moor. My opposer was upon the stand, not preaching, but calling the Mormons. I took my stand about thirty yards from him and got a good congration, for, if he is bufsey when I come, the congration, or most of them, leave him and come to me, so I and Br. Foster Preached the Gosple, the other railing against us, daring us to public descusing.

I closed the meeting by prayer and went to the Arcade. We preached hear one hour. Between meetings I Preached again to attentive congration and we made the best of our way with our fimely home. We got safe home.

May the 22 -- This Day the Shipwrights wages is four shillings a day.

May the 24 -- After work, I went to Sunderland but, being two late to Preach upon the Moor, my opposer had the place. I went and opend our prayer meeting. The Saints enjoyed this meeting.

Do the 26 -- I have received 21 Shelling for six days.

Do the 27 -- After work, I went down to Sunderland. Meet in councile with the Brethern, felling to push on the work of the Lord. The whole town of Sunderland, or the Hirlings, they are coming out to try to save there Crafts by opposing us. I had the pleasure to be in company for the first time of Elder Kermichle.

May the 28 -- After dinner, I meet in the Arcade. The above Elder Preached in the morning. After this meeting, the above Elder and myself got tea at Br Stablers and went down to the Moor. I comenced and sone got a good congration and my old opposer along side of me. My subject, "And This Gosple of the Kingdom Shall be Preached", and the people clouded around me. My old acuser begun

to be uneasy. He wanted to stoap me but the steeam was up. I could not be stoaped. I closed the meeting and told my old accuser that we would desust opnely as he had dared us so much to it. Elder Kermuchel preached in the Arcaed. I returned home.

May the 31 -- While, or getting dinner, Elder Kermichle and Preist F. Hacky from Sunderland came just in time. Sat down. Got dinner. Brought me information that they had. On Monday visted my accuser. His name is Logan, a Baptist Preist, a Brestleite. He acted very courdly for after daring us to Public descusing for about four or five weeks, and that before great congrations, telling them that he would follow us and expsoe & now he dare not come out after he is taken up. The Hirling, they flee becaus they are Hirling. After work, I accompynd the above brethren to Sunderland and, after the prayer meeting, I returned home.

June the 2 -- I have received the some of 21S for six days.

June the 3 -- After work, I went to Sunderland and meet in Council with the Brethren.

Do the 4 -- Attended to my post.

Do the 8 -- After work, I went to Southweek and Preached. Returnd home very tird, walking half asleep and walked two or three times into the dick, ten miles after a days work, and arrived home at twelve o'clock P.M.

June the 9 -- Received 21S for six days.

J the 10 -- Setterday. After work, my self and femely went to Burn Hall.

June the 11 -- A wet day. I went down to Sheam Harbour but did not Preach because of the rain. I visited the Saint and returned to my femely and we left the above place for Hylton. We arrived Safe home.

Monday the 12 -- Having Halloday the after none. I went to Sunderland. Called the brethern together. Heald a Councell meeting and returnd home.

Wednesday the 14 -- After work, I went down to Sunderland. Meet with the Saints. A prayer meeting. The Signs of the Times, the news of the day. England proclaimed war against Spain.

June the 15 -- Signs of the times. East Indies news, a ragment of the English is cut off by the Sicks.

June the 16 -- Receved 19S 9D for five days and half.

June the 18 -- Sabbath. This morning I left Wylton for Newcastle about $\frac{1}{2}$ past six, the Rain powering down. I got wet throu before I got to Sunderland. I called at Elder F. Gillies wet. Took the train accompynd by some more Saints. We arrived but I felt very uncomfortable. I went to my Brother Johns. From there to the conference.

The meeting was opned by Elder Wm Speakman. Elder E. Gilles, Clark, the represantrations of the Branches was called for the Newcastle first. Elder W. Wandlefs, the Sunderland, next, and I represented this, my little Branch consisting of 54 members including two Elders, four Priests, one Teatcher, one Decon -- 16 added, fifteen by Baptism, one daad --- all in good standing except one suspiended.

We have had most added and the best Branch in this, the Carlisle Conference. The Conference will appear in the Star.

I spent this Day very uncomfortable, getting wet through in the morning. More than that, I felt very bad Spirit in this conference but yet I had the setifaction to represant a God Blefsed People in this Sunderland Branch. After the bufsnefs of the day I returned home safe.

June the 21 -- After work, I went down to Sunderland and meet with the Saints. I feel encous to rowl on this work.

June 22 -- After work, I went to Southweek to Preach out dores but the whether did not permit but we heald our meeting in a Brothers house and had a good meeting.

June the 23 -- I have received the some of 21S for six days.

June the 24 -- After work, I left Hylton to fulfill my apointment at Sunderland -- raining very heavy, insomuch that I was wet through. I got dried at Elder E. Gillies and meet in Council with the Brethern. Elder Wm Speakman and Elder Childs was present. The first of the bufsnefs I perposed that on Sabbeth nixt a general fast to be, all who can, that the honest in hart might be added to the Church. Agree to. After bufsnefs all done, I closed the meeting and returned home.

June the 25 -- Sabbeth. I feel very terd this morning and feel to rest untill after dinner. The two above Elders is at Sunderland and will occpy my place this morning. After dinner I left Hylton for Sunderland. Meet with the Saints. Opend the meeting. A good meeting. John Gales was ordained to the office of Preist under the hands of Elders Speekman & Childs and my Self. At the close of the meeting I Baptisd John Blacket in the Sea, a Sailor, and confirmed him by the laing on of my and Elder E. Gillies & Childs hands. I got tea at Preast R Hackys. Meet again. I opnd the meeting the usuly way and called upon Br Childes. He delevered a beautifull descourse. At the close of the same, I returnd home.

June the 26 -- Telegrafted news this Day that in Franch, the captle, Pares, another great slaughter amongst the people, commenced on the 23, last Friday morning.

June the 28 -- After work, I attended our prayer meeting at Sunderland.

June the 30 -- I have received for six Days 21S. The News papers in representing Franch is most horried, never was it Known the Blooddy horried deaths, the lofs of lives is not correctly known. Some say twenty thousand, some tharty thousand. This Bloody mascre

lasted three days. These are troublsom times, indeed, nothing but wars and revelutions in most all Nations. The wise are taking shelter by obeying the gosple. We are beginning to git pretty strong in this Branch, being united and adding wekely to our numbers.

July the 1 - 1848 -- After work, I meet in Councel with the Brethren and returned Safe home.

July the 2 -- This Day is a Day of fasting and prayer that God would Blefs us with an ingathring of the honest in hart. My self & wife & children left Hylton and got th the Arcade all well.

The meeting being opned by Elder E. Gillies & we broke our fast at Br Mattensons. Meet again. I opend the meeting and called Elder Kirmichel to adrefs the meeting which he did. After the same, we returned safe home.

July the 3 -- At work, I was seased with a Sore throat but applied to the anointing with oil.

July the 5 -- My Birth Day -- 33 years of age this Day.

July the 7 -- I have recived the Some 18S 4 $\frac{1}{2}$ D for Five & quarter Days.

July the 9 -- Sabbeth morning. Raning fast, which hindered me from going down to Sunderland, afrade of my throat getting worse.

July the 10 -- We were visited by Brothers Mackies.

July 13 -- Thursday after dinner, two Cobles (flat bottom boat) full of Saints from Sunderland -- a pleasure trip to Lambton Castle. They called at our house. I, wife and Children accompynd them and spent a plesent time which did me much good.

July the 16 -- Sabbeth. After dinner, I, wife & Children left Hylton for Sunderland. We arrived in time at the Arcade. I opned the meeting in the usuly way. After the adminestration of the Bread and Wine, Sister Scott was confirmed under the hand of My Self, Elder Speekman, E.F. Gillies. Sister Burnefst's child and hir self was blefsed, likewise, a Brother. We, the above, laid our hands on and rebucked the desese. I told them that it was nessary to ordain an Elder in this meeting. Br. Foster Hackey, he had been sejested by the Spirit to my mind all this week. Not Knowing that Elder J. Gillese was going to leave us, it was agreed too -- that Priest Foster Hackey be ordained Elder, Priest Robert Hacky take the office of Clark -- Priest John Gale to look after the Stars & Book. We got tea at Robert Hackys and after servis returned home.

WHAT YOU CAN EXPECT TO READ IN BOOK #3 OF THE
WILLIAM KNOX DIARY

Book #3 covers the time period from July 20, 1848 to February 12, 1856.

The Knox family is still in Hylton when this book starts. William continues to work and preach the gospel as he is preparing to go to Zion.

February 3, 1849 -- Goes to Spittal to tell his parents "Good-bye" While there he preaches to the people, felt humble to bear his testimony to the people in the place of his birth.

Feb. 14 -- C. Dawson, his boss at the Pottery, gave him ten pounds with just a signed note that William owed him 10 lbs.

Feb. 15 -- Elizabeth's father sent horses and a wagon to take them to Liverpool.

Mar. 9 -- They set sail from Liverpool.

Apr. 28 -- Arrived at New Orleans.

May 12 -- Arrived at Saint Louis. After they made a part payment of $2\frac{1}{2}$ dollars for lodging, they had 50¢ left and some biscuits, rue and beans left from the ship. 30 people had died coming up the river, including their daughter, Elizabeth.

(William finds the Saints in the City and starts doing what he can to help others. He finds different kinds of work.)

May 1, 1850 -- Take a boat bound for Council Bluffs. Cholera breaks out and people die.

May 16 -- Landed at Council Bluffs. William starts to plant crops. Bought a house and acre of land for \$11.00.

Sept. 3, 1850 -- Daughter Elizabeth is born. They have nothing to eat but corn meal and prairie tea.

Oct. 6 -- William comes down with ague and fever. His daughter, Dorothy, is also ill. They have nothing to eat and no fire wood. The Saints do not respond to their call for help.

May 1, 1851 -- They were so reduced to poverty that they sold their home for \$15.00 and their cow and calf for \$15.00 and went back to St. Louis.

March, 1852 -- He was trying to get money to go to Zion but a large boil appeared on his left arm so that he could not work. He used what money he had left and bought a cow and calf. Both died. That ended his thoughts of going West.

Dec. 1852 -- Still at St. Louis. Emma Josephine Knox is born Dec. 18, 1852. William has boils on his hand and can't work.

Jan. 1, 1853 -- William says, "Same old thing over again -- sickness. "

March, -- Went to work on a new Steam Boat. Got the ague.

August 22, 1854 -- Daughter, Emma Josephine Knox, dies and is buried in Methodist cemetery.

September -- Erastus Snow and Milo Andrus arrive to preside over the Church in this part of the country. William says, "These men have brought a good spirit with them."

Nov. 4, 1854 -- William follows the council of Bro. Snow and starts paying his tithing. He soon realizes the blessings of paying tithing and gets \$16.00.

(William's spirit starts to rise)

Jan. 23, 1855 -- They take 4 people into his house. They have just gotten off boat from New Orleans. He helps others who are sick. He remembers his own past.

(William puts a lot of faith in Bro. Snow and Bro. Andrus. Preaching the gospel is important to him.)

Feb. 12, 1855 -- Bro. Nisonger comes to the Knox house and tells them he is going to try to get them to Salt Lake. William goes to the Merrimac River to haul wood so that he can get money for the trip to Salt Lake.

(William and Br. Nisonger preach the gospel to people in this Area as they try to earn money to go to Salt Lake.)

March 25 -- William and Bro. Nisonger have differences of opinion.

April 8 -- William returns to St. Louis for Conference.

April 9, 1855 -- Elizabeth gives birth to a baby girl, Mary Ann Knox (known as "Polly")

April 19, 1855 -- Leaves Sulfur Spring, in company of Bro. Nisonger and Bro. Pierce, bound for Great Salt Lake City.

April 20 -- Reached St. Louis. Sold his cooking stove for \$5.00. Bro. Snow blessed Mary Ann.

April 23 -- Left St. Louis headed west to Salt Lake Valley.

(The group passed through the populated part of the U.S. headed for the frontier where they would join a company to cross the Plains.)

May 4, 1855 -- About 7 miles past Glasgo, a large branch fell and struck William on shoulder. His senses nearly left him. Some of the brethern drove his team.

May 5, 1855 -- All the cattle were scattered through the night. They had a difficult time finding them.

May 19, 1855 -- Came to Mormon Grove.

May 24 -- A sister, Jane Macclaw paid William 39 Dollars and 90 cents for his help in getting her to Salt Lake.

May 29 -- He bought a Basket Bottle to carry water upon the Plains -- \$1.25. Bro. Erastus Snow preached at the Camp.

May 30 -- Organized into companies.

June 1, 1855 -- William sold his silver watch to get enough money to buy a gun (rifle) which was required for crossing the Plains.

June 8, 1855 -- Started across the Plains -- 51 wagons.

Sept 3, 1855 -- Reached the Great Salt Lake City.

(William Knox kept a separate record of his experiences crossing the Plains. They are in Book #4. From this point on in Book #3, he tells of some of his experiences in Salt Lake.)

Tues. 25 of Sept. 1855 -- Received their Endowments.

Sept. 29 -- Worked for Heber C. Kimball.

Oct. 1, -- Worked at the Historian Office to put on roof.

Sept. 12 -- Joined a "Prayer Circle"

Sept. 15 -- Joined a Military Company. Got a musket, bayonet etc. The Company agreed to get uniforms.

Sept. 25 -- Grasshoppers eating crops.

Sept. 31 -- Joined the 8th Quorum of 70's.

Dec. 13 -- Bought a 24-hour clock.

Jan. 11, 1856 -- Put rafters on 5th Ward School House.

Feb. 12 -- The Lord sent grasshoppers to destroy crops and now the drought and a severe winter is destroying the cattle.

(William ends Book #3 by saying "Continued upon the fourth book. This is the third. Wm Knox)

New Book of John Knox
present from
to me in ^{2nd} mo Newcastle on Tyne

July 5th 1849

William Knox
Sawt. Lewis June the 7th 1849
I commenced this day to gather
my scattered notes together
not having time to spare
to do it besides this my last
book was filled up not having
another until I'm Brother John Knox
made me a present of three small
books for this purpose &c W. P. Knox

Book Third Page 201

Jan to the 20 - 1878. after work I walked
to Southwick which is five miles & reached

Do the 21 I received 21 Shillings for six days

Do the 22 after work I walked to
Wendland which is four miles met in
Council with the Northern & Co. Do the 23

as both I attended my first Sunday school.

July the 28 the people is somewhat alarmed
here the news is that the people in Ireland

have taken up arms against Government &c.

I have received 20 Shillings for six days &c.

July the 29 this day I have deposited of my
Monkwearmouth Savings Bank this is the
money that we got from by selling our

Turner & Co after the same I visited the saints

July the 30 Sabbath this morning I to my post

at Sun got dinner at R. Co. where President

left word for me to make a

collection for him this day which I

collected but with hard fishing I found I

202

The reason for my hard feeling - was
 we were doing as a Branch as much as
 we could & more under existing circumstances
~~as we could~~ after attending to my duty I returned
 safe home August the 3 after work I walked
 to Southwick & preached in the open air -
 August the 4 when Harvest is commenced received
 24 for six days Do the 5 this day I have been
 sick & healed by the ordinance of the Church
 August the 6 Sabbath I walked to Southwick
 got a Chair & a Congregation so I preached
 to a large people while the afternoon after
 by the Primitive Methodist I felt tired but
 Perfille Brown took up the subject and
 did well this is a man professing infidelity
 I got dinner with him went to Sunday school
 met with the saints found Elder Kermode
 in the meeting he rebuked me and I then
 he told me before the saints that W. Spurgeon
 was going to drop me for not opposing
 my opponent on the 20 of July namely

203

Thursday night at Southwick this
 just me to stand for that night
 no man opposed me F. Haully & John Gale
 Brethren being present I spoke until I felt
 tired and called upon the above Brethren
 we occupied the place till nearly dark I
 had five miles to walk after and to work
 in the morning I closed the meeting at
 nearly dark A Primitive Methodist detained
 the Congregation mounted the chaise and commenced
 to tell the people that they were sinners &c
 and that I had been preaching to the Congregation
 just as there were first rate Christians within their
 doors it was exalting me before the people but
 being conscious that I had done my duty I left
 him and the Congregation and made the best of my
 way home I felt much grieved at this kind
 of proceedings that same night Elder W. Spurgeon
 all the day pleasuring at Marsden rock some
 five miles from Ipswich and along with some
 of the sisters Kermode being at Sunday school

BOOK #3

On the fly sheet of Book #3 it says:

This Book is a
present from

John Knox
Newcastle on Tyne

to me Wm Knox

Feby 5th -- 1849

William Knox

Saint Louis June the 19, 1849

I comence this day to gether all
my scatterd history together

not having time & oppertunity

to doe it. Besides this, my last

Book being filled up not having another untill

my Brether John Knox

made me a present of three small

Books for this purpose && W Knox

July the 20, 1848 -- After work, I walked to Southweek which is five miles & Preached.

Do the 21 -- I received 21 Shillings for six day.

Do the 22 -- After work, I walked to Sunderland which is four miles. Meet in Counsel with the Brethern &

Do the 23 -- Sabbeth. I attended my post Sunderland.

July the 28 -- The people is somewhat alarmed hear. The news is that the people in Irland have taken up arms against government & . I have received 21 Shillings for six days & .
(I can't figure out why he keeps adding "&")

July the 29 -- This day I have deposited $4\frac{1}{2}$ in Monkwearmouth Savings Bank. This is the money that we got by selling our Furnuter & after the same I visited the saints.

July the 30 -- Sabbath. This morning I to my post at Sund. Got dinner at R.H. where president Wm Speek left word for me to make a collection for him this day, which I did, but with hard feelings towards him. The reson for my hard feelings was, we were doing, as a Branch, as much as we could & more under existing sercemstanes. After attending to my duty I returnd safe home.

August the 3 -- After work, I walked to Southweek & Preached in the open air.

August the 4 -- Wheet Harvest is comenced. Receved 21S for six Days.

Do the 5 -- This day I have been sick and heald by the ordnefsce of the Church.

August the 6 -- Sabbath. I walked to Southweek. Got a Chair. (This is the first time he has spelled "Chair" this way) & a congration so I Preached to a large people, a little oppiton after by a primitive Methodest. I felt tierd but Unfidle Brown took up the subject and did well. This is a man profsfsing infidelity. I got dinner with him.

Went to Sunderland. Meet with the saints. Found Elder Kermicle in the meeting. He selicted me and I him. He told me, before the Saints, that Wm Speekman was going to drop me for not opposing and my opponent on the 20 of July, namely Thursday neight at Southweek. This put me to a stand for that neight no man opposed, Mr . F. Hacky and John Gale Brethern being present. I spok until I felt tired and called upon the above Brethern. We ocupied the place till nearly dark. I had five miles to walk after and to work in the morning.

I closed the meeting -- it nearly dark. A Primetive Methodest detained the Congration, mounted the chare and comenced to tell the people that they were Sinners & that I had been preching to the Congration just as there were first rate Christines rather than oposon. It was exalting me before the people. But, being conscous that I had done my duty, I left him and the Congration

and mad the best of my way home. I felt much greaved at this kind of proseedings that same neight. Elder Wm Speekman, all the day pleasuring at Marsdon rock, some few miles from Sunderland, along with some of the sisters, Kermicle being at Sunderland. I considered it would looked better on there parts to have been at Southweek doing what I was doing. When Speekman came to this Conference he made great promises that he would rite Bills, stick them up him self & be seen standing at the street cornors preaching but this was but foolish wind and many good oppurtunity blown bye. Kermickle promised great things but failed to preform them. At this time the Saints were suffring, many of them for the want of employment & the Saints felt greaved to see these men ling about getting what they could and never offring to preforme what they so faithfull promised. Many of them told me that they could not doe it any longer. Here I am travling upwards of twenty miles on my foot every week, beside streanding my pockets to carry on the caus and I spoke my mind in the presence of Kermickel, and the Saints. Things was going on not according to my mind. After the meeting I went to Southweek. Got tea at Sisters Burtons. I attended my post in the open air again. After the same I returned home.

August the 8 -- I receved a letter from Elder W Speekman. It was so badly rote that I misunderstood its true meaning. He wanted me to get some of the Saints to advance money. He knew that he had drained the found before this. I understood it this way. He knew that I had Some 4/- in the savings Bank that I got for my Furniture and wanted me to advance Some of this. He wanted to go to the genereal Confrence. Previous to this I was tired of him begging for money and him riding in the railway carriges and me travling on my feet and puling out the last farthing to mentain the cause. I rote a letter to him in return and told him about his promises that he made and had not fulfilled any of them. The saints did, nor would not give any thing at present.

I was real put about and just rote the feeling of my hart for I had been humbuged before with other Presiding Elders of this Conference making such great promises & being so anccous for money at the same time the Saints doing what they could and as a Branch doing as much or more then the whole Confererence.

August the 9 -- After work I went down to Sunderland. Meet with the Saints. Elder Kermickl was there. His bufsnefs was to go to Durham. I gave him liberty to com when he was wore out of any place. We did what we could for him to encourage him in the work but he liked better to lie about upon other men's labours. The Saints told me that they could not doe with this kind of work any longer -- able men ling about from house to house, never offering to preach but spunging out of the pore Saints hundereds of places round about in the County of Durham that never hard the Gosple preached

I read Speekman's letter as I understood it. I spoke my mind before Kermicel and felt agated at the proseedings. After the meeting I gave this letter for the Saints to help me to read it. We made it out. I felt sorrey for misunderstanding it but he could rite planer & I returned home, rote a letter stating my misunderstanding his bad riting and the representation of the Branch.

August the 11 -- After work I received 2 Shillings for six days work. After the same I meet in Council with the Brethern.

August the 13 -- Sabbath. This morning I Preached at Southweck. Got dinner at Sister Burtons. After the same attended my post in the Arcade.

Do the 14 -- I received a letter from Elder W Wandlefs, the President of the Newcastle Branch which stated that some Brother had advanced 2£ in the name of the Newcastle Conference to Elder Wm Speekman to go to the general Conference held at Manchester. I read this letter to my Branch or the Sunderland Branch but they declared that they could not at this time give any more money. Besides this, Elder E Gillies advanced money, some time since, to help to pay the rent of the arcade, our place of worship and now he is out of employment travling the Country. After the same his wife left hear behind him. He has made application to me for it. We, the Council, together with the Saints considered it our dity to endeavour to rais E Gillies money if we can, the first place and tend to the demand of the letter when able.

August the 18 -- I have recieved 21 S for six a work.

August the 19 -- I meet in Council with the Brethern. This Branch now numbers 60 members, good saints but the most of them out of employment and have suffered much from the same.

August the 20 -- Sabbath. This day I have laid before the Saints the needesity of raising E Gillies money. My wife was with me. Got tea at Rr Staberes. I laid hands on Sister Old and rebeked hir desese in the name of Jesus and preached to a good Congration.

August the 23 -- After work I meet with the Saints at Sunderland, a prayer meeting.

August the 25 -- Received 21 Shillings for six days work.

Do the 27 -- Sabbath. Attended Sunderland. Got tea at Sisters Masons and preached to a good Congration. At the close of the same Charles Pollard & Elisabeth Salkeld gave there names in for Baptism on Setterday Neight first.

August the 30 -- After work I went to Southweck to Preach. When I arrived I found most of our Sunderland Saints & Elder W Speakman. They expected Sister Gillies was going tomorrow for Liverpool but not so. I opend the meeting and gave away for Elder Speekman.

September the 1 -- I received 21 Shillings for six days.

September the 2 -- I attended to the Baptisms that was given in at the 27 of August and rejoice to see my prayers fulfilled.

September the 3 -- Sabbath. After dinner I meet with the Saints. Confirmed the Brother & Sister and laid hands on the Sick. Blesed a Child. A good meeting. Sister Old declared that on the 20 of August she was heald of a fearful deseas by the laing on of my hands and never felt any more of it since. A good meeting, inded.

I got tea at Br Stablers and Preached to a good Congregation.
Returned safe home.

Sept the 8 -- I have received 21 Shilling for six days work.

Sept the 9 -- After work I meet in Council with the Brethern and laid before the Council the needsefiting (necessity) of having A Tetchor & A Decon ordained at the coming Conference.

Sept the 10 -- Sabbath. After dinner I & my wife attended our place of worship. I laid before the Saints and officers the necesesity of abiding by the law of God as it is ritting on the Book Doctrine & Coventants; likewise, the Epistle of the Twelve Apostles the law of tithing & Confirmed two Brethern that was Baptised during the week. A good meeting. We got tea at Frother Pollards. After the Same I preached to a tentive Congregation. We returnd home. Found all wright.

Sept the 12 -- This day while at work Charles Fredrick Dawson, my employer, gave me good encouragment to get off to Zion in the Spring. I have been his servent for six years. I pray to God to open his heart that I may make my escape from this Nation to the land of Zion.

Sept the 13 -- After work I attended a meeting at Sunderland.

Do the 14 -- After work I went to Southweek & Preached.

Do the 15 -- Receved 21 S for six days work.

Sept the 16 -- After work I went down to Sunderland but very tierd, having to work all day and travling at neight. I want to see this Branch of the Church Jesus Christ of Latter day Saints in such a prosecon as to be able to defend and spread the principles of truth before I lave them. I meet with the Saints and settled a quarle between Sisters Ann Stabler & Sister Elisabeth Collonwood.

Sept the 17 - 1848 -- Sabbath. I attended a Conference meeting held in the town of Newcastle upon Tyne. Wm Speakman, President, During the meeting Ralph Liddle came into the same. This Conference consists of a large number of Branches. I have been ever since. I attended Conference meeting in additions by Baptisms. We consist of 63 members, including officers. When the Branch was first orgnised, it consisted of three members -- Wm Kent, my self and Ralph Liddle the above, but he is now an open enemy to the caus. He is mentioned in the fore part of my history. Br. Patrick Scott was ordained Teatcher & Brother Charles Pollard decon for Sunderland Branch.

Sept the 18 -- This day while at work I have thought much about a generel fast day. This neight I rote a letter to Priest Robert Hackey for to visit all the Saints in order that Sabbath be a fast day, that the Lord may blefs us with an ingathering of the honest in heart. Prevous to this the fine flour was 4 Shillings per Stone 14 pounds but at this day 2S 4D per stone. Potatoes 8 pence

per Stone. I am enjoying good health. I weigh 11 Stones 6 pounds or 160 pounds, hight five feet 9 inches.

Sept the 22 -- Friday neight. For six days I have received 21 Shillings.

Sept the 23 -- After work I meet in Councel with the Brethern, the fast day agreed to & likewise Brother Scotts house for Preaching on the Tuesday neights. This is the first time for Br Scott & Pollard to be in the Councel. I rejoiced much. All united

Sept the 24 -- Sabbeth. This morning it is poring down rain. I and my wife has comenced this day by fasting & prayer. This is the first time that bad wether has stoped me from going down to Sunderland for I have good men to stand in my place. Now, prevous to this I stood in my place regardles of wether. Now I am begining to see the fruits of my labours. We brock our fast 4 o'clock PM. After the same I went down to Sunderland & opend the meeting, Elder Speekman being present. He Preached.

Sept the 28 -- After work I went to Southweek. Had a good meeting.

Do the 29 -- Received 21 S.

Oct the 1 -- 1848 -- Sabbeth. After dinner I meet with the Saints. A good meeting. Got tea at Br R Hackeys. After the same I Preached to a tentive Congration. At the close of the same, three gave there names for Baptism.

Oct the 3 -- This Day while at work my Master Charles Fredrick Dawson asked me how much money I could rais to go to America. I told him that I had 4 ~~fin~~ in the Savings bank. That all that I have. It is the money that I sold my Furnieter for. He told me that he would lend me ten pounds and to pay him back if I could. Hear is my prayers about to be answered.

Oct the 4 -- I attended our prayer meeting at Sunderland.

Do the 6 -- Received 21 Shilling.

Do the 7 -- After work I went down to Sunderland. Sent the bellman about the town to notify people of our Place of worship & meet in Council. After the same I Baptised four. Returned safe home.

Oct the 8 -- I & my wife meet with the Saints. Elder Wandlefs Preached to large Congration.

Do the 12 -- After work I went to Southweek. Stood in my place.

Oct the 13 -- Received 21 S for Six days.

Do the 15 -- Sabbeth. This morning raining fast. I left Hylton. Meet with the Saints. Got dinner at Br Pollards. After the same got tea at Br Stabelars and preached to a tentive Congration. Returned home drenched in rain.

Oct the 16 My -- Master sent for me. He left three four stone weights in each hand. He was trying his strength so he thought that he would try mine. I carried of the ground in each hand 168 pounds, making 24 stones. The people in this place are affraed of the Collora coming amongst them.

Oct the 20 -- I reived (received) 21 S for six days.

Do the 22 -- Sabbath. After dinner I meet with the Saints. After the (same) I called a Councel meeting. The desesion -- a fast day to be kept next Sabbath and the Bellman to go about the town on Setterday neight to notify the people & I got tea at Br R Hackies. He, likewise, preached to a tentative Congregation. I returned safe home but very wet.

Oct the 26 -- After work I attended Southweek.

Do the 27 -- Received 21 Shillings for six day.

Oct the 28 -- After work I went down to Sunderland to buy two Cloths Shirts but found none. Sister Mason mad me a present of one.

Oct the 29 -- Sabbath. Agreeable to the last Sabbath days council, this day is a day of fasting and prayer. I meet with the Saints. A good Congregation. F. Hacky Preached to the same. We Conserated oil before the Congregation. Meet again after the same. I broke my fast at Br R Hackies. Meet again, our Hall filled inasmuch that seat room was taken up. I felt much daunted, or cast down, feeling my own weeknefs before such a congration but I began to feel the Spirit of my office rsting upon my toung unlosed, my heart glad, all silence, goot attention, Conserated oil, sold the publications & a good feeling rested upon the whole Congregation. I returned home but very wet.

November 1 - 1848 After work I meet with the Saints in the Arcade. Prayer meeting. Gave some teaching in regard to prayer.

Nov the 3 - I have received 21 S for six days work.

November the 5 -- Sabbath. After dinner I meet with the Saints. Elder Speekman was present. After this meeting I called Councel meeting. The above Elder received 10 Shillings & 6 pence from the Branch. It was agreed to make a Collection for Speekmans wife the next Servic & I got tea at Sisters Masons. Meet again. Elder Speekman's decorse was shoing the fals doctrln of the trienety & after the same a public Collection was mad for Speekman's wife. 5 Shillings was got. This is the first public Collection made in this Branch. We keep a plate standing at the dore to keep up the rent and a Box stands on the table. The Saints put what money they could spare into this Box to Seport the President of the Conference out of this Box. Speekman gets his money.

Nov the 8 -- After work I went down to Sunderland. Meet withe the Saints.

Southweek some time since (word unreadable), but would, or could not, but this, at last, before we brok up caused much talk. I was obliged to interferral. Brother Robert desplaid a speesmen of his wisdom. I felt sorry for him. As I was on my way home, it was emprefsed upon my mind to rite a letter to Br. Robert and give him some previt teatchings for his good. (very confusing)

December the 13 -- I rote a letter to Br. Robert Hacky, giving him counceal for I want to see all act wisely. There welfare is mine. I received a letter from W. Speekman stating that the Conference would have to be prosponed. His wife was so bad, or sick. The abov letter to Brother Robert contained this information to prevent aney from going to Newcastle on Sabbath first.

December the 15 -- I have received 21 Shilling.

Dec. the 16 -- This day I have received a Letter from Elder Wm Speekman stating the death of his wife on the 15 of December 1848.

Do the 17 -- Sabbath. After dinner I meet with the Saints and taught the necefsity to unite & to send Elder Speekman relief, or money, agreed two and done.

Elder Foster Hacky stood up and said there was somthing upon his mind; therefore, he would call a full meeting of both officers and members and there devulge it. I beleved this to be quit out of order and a man enflunced by a bad spirit. I, therefore, stood up and forbaid such unrightous profsedings. I told them thatif Brother Foster had aney thing, me or aney one els had done him aney harm, it was to be done in a Scriptural way and not to throw a whole Congration into confusion.

I closed the meeting but this Securd (he means "secret") thing of Brothers Fosters caused much uneasnefs, not knowing what it is. I got tea at Sister Masons. I felt much cast down but, on my way from Hylton, I thought that all was not wright at Sunderland. I prayed to God to make it menefest. This is just according, or an answer, to my prayer.

Meet again. A large Congration afsembled. I felt as I could not Preach to the same. I commenced and forgot the things that were behind. The Spirit of my Master cheared my heart. I preached to attentive Congration. After the same, I called the officers to stop a Councel meeting to enquire into this seceret of Elder Foster Hacky. I laid the order of this Church before the Councel. I thought it wisdom to root out enequiety as sone as it mad its apperance. We sat one hour in Councel upon this Secered thing of Br Fosters but no better. He declared that he would not devouged it till tomorrow neight. I, together with the Councel, considered this bad behavior.

I had four miles to walk after this meeting -- to work the next day and walk the road over again, besides some of the officers could not attend, had to work, 8 miles &&& (confusing), but, as I was about to leave this Countery and wishful to see all things going as formely, I agreed to meet again to have this sciered exploded. I got safe home and rote a letter to the President of the Conference to come as sone as pofsable. Statted the perteclers.

December the 18 -- After work I went down to Sunderland to get this great mistery blown up. I opend the meeting in the usule way. Showed that it was not accorging to the principles of the Kingdom of God for aney officer, or member, to Call a full meeting to expose any secceted thing against there President office or member, but, if they had out against them, go to them alone and then, if they will not hear, you take two or three more & I advised Br. Foster to be carful with feeling of sinpthy.

He had his counslers with him, namley: Prest Robert Hacky, Ann Hacky, Hannah Hacky, Mary Stabler, Ann Stabler. He stood up to explan this great mistery of his. He said that the work of the lord had been stoped and there was reson for it and that Brother Knox stoped it for he confined me to Preach nothing but the first principles when he wished to Preach somthing els, and Br Knox was not fit to persid over a Branch for he was an ignorent man.

I fail to rite his railing against me, his feamel Councel sitting smiling. I did fee sorrowful for him. His countnefs was terrible. I forgave him and advised him to mind the Morman Creead. This is the great mistery hitched up by a Councel of feemales with a mail at their head.

The Branches in this Conference, we were the least Branch, now we are the highst and good prospects but the caus of all this is I would not allow this feameal Councel to govern this Branch and Foster not placed at head quarters. I desmfed the meeting. All the Saints, except this Councel were ancious to hear this great mistery, but poor Foster could not git the Saints to back him. No, they would suffer aney thing reather than hear aney thing against there President. This gave me great conselation.

December the 21 -- After work I went to Southweek. Meet with the Saints.

Do the 22 -- I receved 21 Shillings for Six days work.

December the 24 -- After dinner, Sabbeth, I meet with the Saints at Sunderland. Read a portion of the Epistle of the Twelve Apostles, the necefsity of Preaching the first principles, the law of tithing & Elder Kermichel & Elder Blachet were present. After the meeting, I called the officers together, a Councel meeting. I laid the proceedings of Elder F Hackies before the officer but it was in vain. He thought he was wright. After bufsnefs was attended to, the meeting closed. I got tea at Sisters Masons. Met again. Elder Blaket & Kermichel preached.

Christmas day -- Dec. the 25 -- A fine day. Br Richard Mason, Br Charles Pollard visited us at Hylton. I spent the day with them.

December the 28 -- After work I meet with the Saints at Southweek.

December the 30, 1848 -- I have receivd 15 Shillings & 9 pence for $4\frac{1}{2}$ Days.

December the 31 -- Sabbeth. Meet at Sund. with the Saints. Br. Hunter that was suspended made his apperance. Br Foster not at the meeting. A good meeting indeed. Got tea at Brother Olds and preached to a tentive Congration. Got safe home.

January the 1, 1849 -- This day I rote two letters, one for my parents, the other to Orson Pratt and carried the same to Sunderland.

January the 2 -- After work I meet at Sund with the Saints. Prayer meeting.

Jan the 7 -- Sabbeth. After dinner I meet at Sun with the Saints. Received a letter from Speekman. After the meeting, I called a Councel meeting. Read the letter & I told the Councel that we had better leve the thing that are behind for my time will be short amongst you. My way is inward. Let man stand firm at his post. I got tea at Sister Masons. Read her a letter Orson Pratt, Elder Bambrige preached. I called at Sisters Newtons. Hir Husband agree to be Baptised on Setterday Nieght.

January the 9 -- After work I meet at Sund with the Saints. After, I agreed to Baptise 5 on Setterday neight.

Jan the 12 -- This week has been very corse, forbiddings the Baptisms to all appearence on Setterday neight, but the prayers of the Saints is for fine on Setterday neight and this is Friday Neight. The sea is very corse. I recieved 21 Shillings for six days.

Jan the 13 -- After work, this being a fine day, our prayers is answered. I went down to Sund. Gave notice to the Savings Bank to draw 4£ in two weeks time. I meet the Saints in the Arcade. From there to the See Shore. I thought it to be Safe for Br Charles Pollard to Stand by me in the See until I Baptised Stevn Newton, Mary Pollard and Elisabeth Swan. All safe. Got home.

January the 14 -- Sabbeth morning at six o'clock mad ready to go to Newcastle, the Confernce. I told my wife, I felt to lay hands on hir that she may be safe deleverd. She said there was no signs of that. I did so. I set off for Newcastle. Meet at Conference. Wm Speakman, President. I represented Sunderland Branch, 73 members including 2 Elders, 4 Prests, 1 Teacher, 1 Deacon, 13 Baptised since las Confernce, 1 Cut off, 2 left. John Gale ordained Elder. I proposed him to be the President of the Sunderland Branch. Charles Pollard ordained Preist for the same. G.D. Watt gave some excelent teatchings. After the day proseedings was over, I returned home and found that I had done reight in the morning for my wife was safe delevered of a man Child. His name is Peter Knox. I rejoiced and returnd thanks to Almighty God for his goodnefs towards us.

February the 3 -- I left Hylton to go and see my Father and Mother at Spittal, Near Berurek upon Tweed. I went by the railway. I arrived there in the fornoon. My Mother was schooring the stares down. I spoke to her. She turnd about with anuous grasp, got hold of my hand. Welekomed me into the house beleiving it to be the last time. The tears trinkled down her cheeks.

My Father came very soon, a stick in his hand. His strong boady born down with age and enfirmenty. It was a meeting the hardest heart would soften at such a time. I went out to see some of my old frinds. I was no soner out than I was asked if I could Preach to them. I told them I would to neight if I could git a place. I found the same place that I had before. I sent the bellman about the town.

His cry was that Wm Knox would Preach to neight and tomorrow neight in the new school room for the last time before he goes to America. I paid him six pence for the same. I Preached in this place last year 3 neights. Mr. John Alexander, Mr. Ripple, these are the men that let me have the place. Besides, I had the last time and the first spoiled many from going to there old places of worship.

The time came for me to appear before my townsman. I entered the place. They looked seariously upon me. I mounted the Pulpit, the wals all decrated with Scripture pieces, all thing in order just as I was some great Reverent devine. I comenced by singing. A young man staped forward and raised the tune. My townsman did shoe me great kindnefs. I Preached to a tentive Congration and rejoiced at the close of the same. I was welcomd and blefsed by many. My old Parents full of joy and soorow. I had no time to visit as yet. I felt to embras the prevleg to bare my humble testimoney again in the place that gave me Birth. This day is closed after travling about 80 miles and one hour and half perclaming the principles of life and salvation to my Kindred and townsman.

February the 4 -- Sabbeth. This day I visited my Frinds. I likewise steaped into my old place of worship, a Baptist Chaple, Mr. Cirkwoods. I invited maney to come to hear me this neight. The time came. I comenced as usuly. The place full. I had great liberty and bore my testimony and felt satified that I had, according to my ability, done the best that I could, lofsing no oppertunity wherever I have been, to gether in the honest in hart.

I felt like raising a Branch hear but time would not permit. I have, therefore, laid the foundation in this part. I have preached five times in this place that gave me Birth, amongst my Kindred & townsman & published it widley. I am the first that ever proclaimed the fulnefs of the Gospel in this part of the Country and I hope that I have not laboured in vain.

Febuary the 5 -- This morning I got breckfast with Peter Adimson, enquiring into the principles. I took leave of all my frinds but oh, My Father & Mother -- the parting I cannot decribe. My Father told it was deth, the tears flowing down his rinkled face. My Mother went to the train with me. I fael to pen the feelings. A tender-harted Mother, inded. I praid for courage for I needet it at this time. The train went off. I sone lost sight of the place that gave me Birth and arrived at Newcastle upon Tyne. I visited my Brother, John Knox. He gave me this Book and two more to rite my history. I took leave of him. Visited a few Saints and returnd safe home.

February the 11 -- 1849 -- Sabbeth Day, long to be remembered. I left Hylton again for the last time to meet with the Saints in the Arcade. Every one that I meet coming to the dore, when I shook hands with them, the tears gushed down there cheeks. I entered the dore. I felt as I never felt before. I was about to leave my flock that was once three but now Seventy and three. I entered the hall, it full, but the seen was more than I could bare, everyone welcoming me, flods of Tears bursting from there eyes. A great many

shook hands but could not speak. There new President opened the meeting. After the same, he sat down for me to speak to the saints. I gave them all the encouragement that I could. The spirit of God rested upon me. They all felt the same. The meeting closed. I got tea at Sisters Masons. After the same, we meet again. The Hall filled to hear my Preach my fairwell Sermon. I told them that I could not Preach a Fairwell discourse. The meeting was opened. I felt Sorrowful and glad to see such a Congregation --- glad that my delevence was at hand, sorrowful to leave my flock behind, not knowing what was in the future and they so anxious to follow me, not willing to part with me. I commenced and laid down the first principles, having liberty and bore my testimoney but could not Preach a fair well discourse. At the close of the same, I returned safe home. Six gave there names for Baptism.

February the 13 -- After work, I Baptised Charles Young, Thomas Schath, John Giffers, William Pollard, John Marsdon, Sarrah Marsdon in the Sea. Confirmed them in the Arcaid. My time is take up prepairing to go off.

February the 14 -- This day Charles Fredrick Dawson gave me the ten pounds that he promised me. All that he desired of me was to sign my hand with a vine peliel, "I owe you 10£. He packed all my tole into my Chist. May the blefsings of heaving rest upon that man for his goodnefs and God spare me to reward him for I desire to do it.

Febuary the 15 -- This morning is bloing very hard. We are mak ready to leave Hylton but the wind bloes so hard, my wife so lately confined and week and cold for the childring, but feeling anicous to be off. We stoaped all neight in my Sisters, Dorothys, to be ready but notwithstanding the wind that appeared to be our stoap. I felt that we could not be stoaped.

My wife's Father sent two horses and a cart. Her Brother Thomas to drive them. My anxiety grew stronger seeing the Chist in the Cart and things all in comoting.

It was my comon way in the morning to return thanks to my Father in Heaven for his protection during the neight and ask his protection upon me and mine during the day. This I had not attended, as yet, being in my Sisters house, but I felt strong desires to doe so, believing that the elements would turn to our favour.

I told them that, if we went to our Knees, I would pray for the wind to lower, but they were all so bufsey putting things to wright, putting warm cloths upon the children and this was not attended, the time pafsing away, the wind bloing a gale forbidding our removal, people gethering around showing there sorrow for us going out from them. I never thought that we were loved so much but the cry of the people is he is a honest good man. But, deluded as I was, they wanted Knox to stoap amongst them. My desires still to pray for the wind to sees its vengeance and let us go in peice amidst of all the bussling, cring, shaking hands &&%. I again told them that, if they would go to there Knees, I would pray and the wind would scease bloing and we would go in pieace. This was agreed two by all. We Knelt down and in my simole way asked my Father to fitt us for the Jurney that was before us and stay the winds &&. To the astonishment of all present, in five minets there was a calm. My hart filled with joy.

We left Hylton, the place where I first hard the principles of life and salvation. The place where we were Born again into the Kingdom of God by water and by the Spirit. The place and neberhood where I have contended earnstly for the faith once deleavourd to the Saints amidst a host of oppitions. Thousands have heard my up-lifted voice, both rich and poor. I feel in my heart justified and leave this place without a single refelection. I have cried aloud but they would not hear. I have spared not.

We reached Sunderland where God has abundently blefisd my labours, where I have cried aloud amidst of strong oppsition, but not in vain. Here the seen is dubble reppetted, seeing my face and about to leave them. Who knows the love of saints but these who are Saints?

Sister Mason gave me Five Sovrings.. (A Soverign is worth one pound sterling. It is a coin, made of gold until 1937 when Britain went off the gold standard) Hear we have raised about between 27 & 28 Sovrings. This is more than ever I expected to rais. We stoped all neight at Sisters Collenwoods. Maney of the Saints sat up all neight to be ready in the morning.

February the 16, 1849 -- At half past five in this morning, we parted with my wife's Father and Sister Jane and the Saints. The feeling of the Saints and my own I cannot pen. Richard Mason, the sone of Sister Jane Mason that gave me the five sovrings. Under my charge, our little Children kept talking to us riding in the coach and behaved well. The day was favourable to us. We got on as well as I expected under existing Surcemstences. We got to Liverpool about four PM. Got Convance. Called at the Latter Day Saints office. Got a card to go to a boarding hous in Key Street. We arrived. Got refrashment &&.

February the 17 -- We, I & Richard, went to the office &&&

Do the 18 -- Sabbath morning. I went and meet with the Saints in Liverpool and enjoied the meeting. Elder Andrews preached. I came to my Femely again. Got dinner. Meet again and one of the Twelve for the first time -- Arson Pratt. I rejoiced much but poor Richard begun to fret. I attended again and felt good. My wife got cold in coming but a good hart on the subject.

Feburay the 19 -- We are now getting the extery provisions, 2² worth for the voige, besides the tin ware for cooking &&.

February the 21 -- This day I payed our pafsage money 3^p 12 Shillings, 6D for each adult. Childring under 14 years 12 Shillings up, under one year free. The fair 13^p 5S Bound for New World in the Ship "Hartly, to leave ol England.

After we had got all arrainged, poor Richard was determend to see his mother & sister again and back he went to Sunderland. I rote a letter to his mother &&&&.

Were four neights at lodgins, six pence, making two shillings a neight. We found our own bettling.

On the 21 of February, we took our lodgings in the Ship Hartley, but very cold for my wif and children. Allowed no light nor fire while in the dect. It was uncomfortable besides expensive to find our own meet until that we got to see. We were in this state until the 4 of March, neither light nor fire aboard. My wife so lattly confined, she sufferd much. Besides the confusion in the vefsel, getting her cargo into the hold, there was tharteen different Natons of Pepol on Bord, abov 200 Pafsangers -- Welch, Scotch, Irish, English Saints, the ship about 400 & 50 tons Burdon.

We left the docts on the 4 of March, brought up in the river Mercy, the wind contrary. On the 9 of March we set sail at 7 o'clock A.M. A beautiful morning. The wind in our faviour, but while we were in the dock, a Welsh Sister was delevered of a feemaen Child. Three Irish men had themselves stowed away but, expecting that the Ship was at Sea, made themselves known but, alas, they wore stile in Liverpool and left there to the subject.

Again, the wind in our favior. We begun to rejoice. We lost sight of the land on the 12 of March with a fine wind, but the seen amongst the pafsangers -- the vefsel roling throug with a four wind, the sea Sicknefs to a great pitch was on board.

The name of the President --- William Hume. The saints were all dvided into small Breanches. My Branch consisted of 15 members to see all kept in order and I got cold pafsing the cold Welsh Mountings. My wife was not Sick, neither Childring. She was one of the best in the Ship. I got a bad throt. My Childring begun to get very stout. The winds contuned favourable. Seasicknefs left in a mesure. We heald our reglour meetings, preaching every neight upon dect when favourable -- a good Captin, agreeable Saliors. I Preached on dect at times.

April the 6 -- This Morning a Conference meeting is held on the dect of the Ship Hartly, sailing in Latitude 22.30N, Longitud 66 W. We asembled a half past 10 o'clock and represented the small Branches, generely in good standing, good health generely. I represented my little flock, 15 in number in good stand, good health except three scattered members. President Hume asked Brother Knox could have scattered members on board of a ship. I explaind the mistery that three of my flock when we are at our duty, they are as far as they can get for salt water. This caused a laugh.

We were pretty comfortable. One Child died. The King Coff got amongst the Children. My daughter, Elisabeth, my first born catchd it.

April the 11 -- Fine wether. I Preached on the dects of the Hartley.

April the 15 -- Sister Hall was delevered of a man Child. The wind against us. My Daughter, Dorothy, got the King Coff. We arrived at the Mouth of the Misippea on the 26 of April.

On the 28 of April at Neworleans. -- Elder Scofil came on Board. Gave us counsel how to doe to perserv health & Engaged the steem boat, Memelick.

We left Neworleans on the 3 of May ~~for~~ Saint Louis, Mo. -- We had no soner going aboard of that boat then the Saints Sickund and, in a few hours, 5 & 6 in a day, nothing but deth to them that got sick. My daughter, Elisabeth, fell a fictom, died on the 9 of May. Burried in a grave five. I asked the owener of the name of the place. He rte it, "Brandywine Bend Country Tylpon". I fael to rite the feelings and destrefts.

Arrived at Saint Louis May the 12 -- Died about thirty of the Saints between Neworleans and Saint Louis. I went to seek a house. Sought all mos the day and did not find until neight. I had giving up a young man, a Meriean, pafsing throug the Boat, my wife setting with the two Childring. He hard me telling her and he told me to come with him and he would shoe me a house. I went and took this house, Br Henery Brocky with me. It was five dollars a month. I had three dollers. That was all the money that I had. Brocky had none.

This is setterday neight in a strange Country, nearly dark. This five dollers had to be paid down upon the nail. I told the land-lord that I had but three dollers. I pay the half, $2\frac{1}{2}$ Dollers, and pay the rest as soone as pofsable. He agreed to it.

We got our luggag upon two drays. By this time, it is dark. When we got near to the place, I cound not find it again. The dray men was putting off our Chists in the Streets. Hear we were in a Strange town, dark and could not find the place. I did not Know what to doe. At last, when I had giving up all hops, a Saint found it for us. Never did I feel mor thankful. I stood upon my feet at the dore with my daughter in my arms and returnd thanks to my Father in heaving.

We got all in safe, made our bed upon three Chists. I had fifty cents left, some Biskets and some rue that we brought from the ship. and some beans.

May the 13 -- I found the place where the Saints meet. I felt referesend (I am not sure what this word is but William Knox has written it clearly). Said my old Frind Elder John Barker after meeting. I hard that Richard Mason, him that left me in Liverpool, had come. I went and found him. He was going to the Bluffs. He came with the Ship after us, after he had seen his mothur. The collora was beginning to rage.

May the 17 -- I found work at the steem boat on Brooks dock at $2\frac{1}{4}$ dollers per day, caulking. This week I have rought $2\frac{1}{4}$ days, the next week $2\frac{1}{2}$ Days, the next week $3\frac{3}{4}$ days. Work is bad to get. The collora getting worse. I have been called upon to visit the sick. The (too light to read) are suffring much.

July the 15 -- ~~Meet with the Saints. Sabbeth after dinner, I was called out of the meeting to got to a Brother that had taken the collora. He took it about dinner time. I, an another, put up all neight. He died at three o'clock A.M. I washed him and shaved him and the coffin, put him into it. Came home.~~

July the 16 -- My Sone, Peter -- the picture of good health. Born on the 14 of January, 1849 England. After coming threw all the Seeknefs and deth on the sea and river, he was seased with clore at neight with cramp. We sat up all neight with him but could not save him.

On the 18 of July -- One thing I have left out. I found the Saints in the sixt ward meeting in Bywardrobe. They locked the dore for fear of the apstates. Little work. June. The Cholra is raging. I am much engaized, along with Br. Thomas Silcock and Br. Danel, Sutherland. Neight and day attending upon the poor saints. They are suffering, falling upon every side. My wife was seased with the Cholara, a bad case. I attended to ths ordnance of the Church, time after time and the lord had mercy upon her. By this time we were gitting hard up -- no work.

July -- I sought work till I was tird. I sat down upon a stone and prayed to my God that I might find work. I rose up and went into a foundery. I got work to labour $\frac{11}{11}$ doller (do not know what he means) per day. I wrought two days.

(The last four entries were written and crossed out)

July the 15 -- Sabbeth day. Br. Daniel Sutherland called me out of the meeting to attend a Brother taken with Cholara. A bad case. He died at four a clock AM. Br. Burey was with me. We went and got a coffing. I shaved him and washed him. Putt him into the coffing and returned home.

July the 16 -- This day my son, Peter, was seased with Cholra. One the 18 of July, he died. This hurt my feelings. He was the picture of good health -- was carried young from his native Country and had come thus far in the midst of sicknefs and deth. He was burried in the City Grave Yard. He was born at Hylton in the County of Durham, England on the 14 of January, 1849. Died on the 18 of July, 1849. By this time I was getting short of money. My landlord, Michel Furey, loned me three dollars to assist me to burry my only son. I have wrought 14 days since May the 12. Hard times.

July the 20 -- The sixt ward meetings being held in my house. I was appointed for Tresure for the sixt ward for the seport of Presedent Felt. I have got work a new steem boat, 1 3/4 Doller per day. I contined at this about four weeks, three & four days per week. Tite lumber could not be got. I got work at George Mitchells Cooper. This was strange to me, not having done aney the Kind for about twelve years, making flour barrel at twenty cents, besides bad timber and bad hoope poles and bad tools. He loned me them. The work being entirely different from what I learnd in England. I did not Know what to doe for I only could make 18 & 19 & 20 & 21 & 22 & 23 & 24 & 25. (I do not know what he means by these numbers.) This her week is the way that I went week after week, Cooper work being very bad. I could not

better my self. I have not kept a corect account of what I have made, but I have averaged it to about $2\frac{1}{4}$ to $2\frac{1}{2}$ dollers per week since I came to this Countery to the last of December, 1849.

January the 1, 1850 -- From this time to the 8 of February, I have made 25 dollers and 95 cents. Cooper work being done, I then got a job at Carpenter work, but before I got it, I was turnd of seeking work. I went into the sugger Factory to seek labouring work. Hear the Lord answerd my prayers. I seid the owner of the place, Mr. Belsher. I asked him for a Labours work but he asked me what I was and gave me work at Carpenter work $1\frac{1}{2}$ doller per day from the 9 of Febuary to the 23. I made $28\frac{1}{2}$ dollers this day, the 24 Febuary. I have taken salts, felling it nefsary. I am in the house all day.

This March the 2 -- I have receved the some of nine dollers for six days work.

March the 3 -- Sabbeth. This morning I have loned the some of twenty two dollers to be paid on demand to Br. Duncan Campbell. This is what we have saved since the 9 of February. It is to afsest him to purches his oxen. The Snow is about 6 inches deap.

March the 5 -- I have received five dollers in part payment from Br. D. Campble.

March the 9 -- I have received the some of nine dollars for six days work.

March the 16 -- I have recived the some of nine dollrs for six days work.

March the 17 -- I have given one dollar to help President Felt to go to the Velly.

March the 23 -- I have received the some of nine dollars for six days. My work is sone. I have received the some of 14 dollars from Br. D. Campble in part payment.

March the 24 -- Sabbeth. This morning it is snowing. Very cold. I went down to the leavy expecting to see a steem boat load of Saints which was expected every hour. My object in going was to afsisst aney of them that was distuted for I was without funds and little money in my pocket when I landed.

I inquired for the Boat, Uncal Sam, whether she was arrived from Neworleans yet. The answer was that they were detained below burring there dead and that they were Mormens and it would be a good thing if the balance of them were burried.

I made the best of my way to Church and hard Br. Grand preach a sermon from a text, "for ye are no longer forgners and strangers, but fellow Citizens with the Saints", & likewise President Felt gave the Saints to understand that those that did not pay there laful debts but promised to pay when they got to the Salt Lake, that there course was wrong and he wont remember them.

After dinny, I went again down to the leavy just in time. The boat was in sight and soon arrived. I went through amongst them and offered my serves and my house to aney that had no fiends in this City &, but they all appeared to have some.

March the 25 -- I have comenced Coopering at Br. George Mitchells but the Barrels is a low prise. I thought it would be better then nothing until a Boat would go to the Bluffs for work cannot be got at this time in this City.

March the 30 -- I have receivd three dollars from Br. Campbell. He has paid me every Cent that I loned him.

March the 31 -- I had the pleasure to hear Br. Bibbet delever a Beautiful descorse which caused my heart to rejoiced. He is the first reperepresentive from desert, or the velly of the Salt Lake.

April the 6 -- I have received the some of 7 dol & 80 Cents for two weeks. Flour Barrels 15 Cents each.

April the 8 -- While I was at work making hoggheads in Br. George Mitchell's shoap, after dinner my wife came and told me that my daughter, Dorothy, had falling down stares and brocken her arm. I found Br. Dumbell, he is a high Priest, and found that my wife had her little arm Bandged up. We opened it off and anointed it with oil -- laid hand upon her and bandaged it again.

When she fell down stares, her mother took her up drectely between the elbo and the hand, or rest, the boan stuck ut. The poor little sufferer cried out for oil to anoint her arm and for her Father to come to lay hands on her. My wife anointed her arm and grasped the bone together with her hand and then came for me. We founded the arm stright and well banged up.

April the 27 -- This neight I feel descetifysed about my wages from Br. George Mitchell. I consider that he has ronged me out of 25 cents per day, at least. I have reseved 25 dol fore three weeks work. I was making had (?) in the shoap, two per day which is $1\frac{1}{2}$ dollar per day. He took me from the shoap to a pork house to head-up pork. He had five cents per Barrell and five Cents for every new hoop and fifteen Cents for every new head. The Barrels was in bad state but to his advantage. Him and me meded up 80 per day. I can doe as much as him or aney other man.

I made above two dollars per day, not counting new hoops making and new ends. He found the stuff. I did not git my wages for three weeks. I expected to git at lest $1\frac{1}{2}$ dol per day for he took me from a job that I was making $1\frac{1}{2}$ dole per day and employed two dutch man in my place. I was the only man in the shoap that can doe aney Kind of work and he has payed me for at $1\frac{1}{4}$ doller per day making at least $\frac{3}{4}$ dole -- three quarters proffit of me.

April the 30 -- We have sold our furnuter to Mr. Feusy for 3 dollars.

May the first -- We got on board of the Sacermento Steem boat bound for Councle Bluffs. We had no sooner got on board than the Cholla made it apperence.

May the 2 -- A women died mix birth of the Chollera. I attended her, expecting nothing but Chollera in the boat while we were going up the Miffouric river. We left Saint Loues of the second of May. We landed at Councel Bluffs on the 16 of May -- a good paffage -- no more deaths. I got a waggen --- got my lugage hauled to Kensvill which is five miles for 150 cents. Got in a school room all neight for shelter. Nixt morning, I went and sought a place of residence. B.F. Young bought a log house, one acker of land for me. We took profsing on the 18 of May, 1850 -- paid to Br. Colvin the some of eleven dollars. I fielt quit at home. So did my wife. We returned thanks to our Heavenly Father having been protected thus far and for the time that we enjoy the blefsing of a place of our own and rested on Sabbeth day.

On the 20 of May -- I comenced to dig with the spaid and planted potatias. My spaid cost 1 dollar & 40 Cents, wood ax 1 dollar, Seeds 40 cents, Salt 10 Cents, Seed corn 30 cents, Beans 30 Cents, hay foark 75 Cents, Corn Meal 75 Cents, Matches 30 Cents. Sold our stove that we Bought at St. Louis second hand for 7 dollars just new for 13 dollars to David Colvin. Bought a cow 13 dollars, one Bule Calf for 1 dollar - one month old, bought 11 hens, 1 cock 1 dollar and 85 Cents, one skellet to Bake Bread 75 Cents.

May the 23 -- Planted our corn. Received 6 dollars from Br. Brown for work last year at New Orleans. Bought one acker of Seed corn 15 cents, hasele Brush from Br. James Snow for 2 dollars. I and my wife cut it in 2 weeks hard work. I could not get aney of the Brethern to Break it up for me for neither love nor money. I comenced and diged the half of it with the Spaid until I liad my self up sick, it gitting late and fiering that we would not have what would supply us during the winter. At length, Br. Wm Casto and B. Wm Snow loned me these oxen and Br. Hickley plowed the remainder. Paid 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ dollar to Br. Hickley & boy for the same.

July the 4 -- I went to Kansvile and sead the profsion. Bought corn meal 75 Cents, tea 20 cents, soap 15 cents, salt 10 cents, paper 5 cents.

July the 18 -- We have finished howing our corn and comenced to dig out a well for water.

July the 22 -- This day I have got my leg brused. The windlefs that I am making to the well fell over upon my leg and brused it. Very sore. Disabled me.

July the 27 -- This Day we have eat green Sweet Corn for the first time, the labour of our own hands. Likewise, laid in our tea for winter and the time being got it on the Prarey. It grows on little Bushes, resembles the Chiney tea. Good.

July the 28 -- This day I have comenced again with the well. Br. Bottom ingaged to me to work for 75 Cents per day to find watter. He wrought three days and left me. Pretended that he was sick. The next day he went and cut hay upon the prarey and disapointed me.

August the 7 -- After a considerable deal of truble, I got Br. Jones to help me for one dollar per day. We got plenty of watter on 8 of August, 32 feet from the surfis. Good watter.

August the 9 -- This day I went to Kensville and Bought 40 feet of Roap 80 Cents for the well. A Bucket 30 Cents, Chamber poe 50 cents, Candles 10 Cents, Soap 25 Cents & a hay Syth 125 cents.

August the 10 -- This deay I went to the engen Mill and bought 40 Cents of timber deals for to finish the well. During digging the well, I took notice of the Soil. It was good 12 feet down. The rest of the way, loom or somthing like it. I digged down four feet after I came to water. I had to get 20 Cents of Whiskey, it was so could in the well and so hot out of it. Every thing is wanting rain, very druthy.

August the 12 -- This day I have finished the well.

August the 14 -- This day I have comenced to cut hay. Hot wether.

September the 3 -- This neight my wife was delevered of female Child. Her name is Elisabeth Jane Knox. We are very poor at present. Nothing but corn meel and Prarey tea to eat.

Previous to this, James Snow, the President of the Branch of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints at Centervell, when I bought this, my little Farm from David Colving on the 18 of May, 1850, I bought and payed for all the railing and wood that was on the Said little Farm. The nixt week, after me taking pofsing, this said, James Snow, told me that all the railing that was on the place that I had bought from D. Colving, belonged to him and it was worth about Seven dollars but he would let me have them for some two or three. I thought this was a straing way to treat strangers. I felt to git to the bottom of this Skeem, if pofsable. I went to D. Colving and told him that (he) had sole me James Snow railing. D. Colving said that J. Snow was a lier & I went to J. Snow and told him what D. Colving had said and I tried to git these two men fase to fase, but could not. They lived about tow or three hunderd yeard apart.

D. Colving saed that J. Snow was a bad man and wanted to git money out of him but he could not doe it. No two ways that he could fix it and he would not go to him. J. Snow said that he had (no) time to go to D. Colving. I considered them both as one and did not Know which to beleve. Both displaed a poor, meen Spirit. I forgot this part untill I had pafsed the proper place in my history, but to return to my proper place.

After my wife was delevered and all right, the nixt day I hired a young woman attend upon my wife and I contunied to make hay. The same day, this said James Snow wif called to see my wif and said that she had such a fine dinner and said that Sister Colving was so sick and that some should attend her & my wif fielt grieved at her, they having flour and rice that they borroed from us and not offering to pay it and, at the same time, my wife had nothing but Corn Meal to live upon.

Mrs. Snow left my hous, went to Sister Cloving. She had not been long there untill Sister Coling's boy came from the young woman. She went and came back and told my wife that they wanted her to leave and go to their hous. Shortley after, the boy came again. The next morning, this Said young woman left my wif in this state and this Sister Colving was able to walk about.

We blamed this saed Sister Snow for it. James Snow & I had pretty high word about what he borrowed from me. I oeing that after that I supplied him in need. He forget that we were in great need of our own at this time and he had it in his pofsing to pay. The same neecessity caused me to speak sharp to him. He squared up with me.

I contuned to cut hay untill I cut about twenty tons. I payed my Tithing, gave the one half for hauling it home to Wm Casto.

Oct the 1 -- I went to Kansville to work one day to Jane Mason, one \$.

Oct the 3 -- I went to work for Robert Keey waggon, \$1 $\frac{1}{2}$ per day.

Oct the 5 -- Conference at Kanesvill. I was admitted a member of the Elders Corm.

Do the 6 -- I am sick.

Do the 7 -- Not able to go to work. I sent for President James Snow. He laid hands on me but contuned worse. We had five Cents in our profsesing. Sent to Kanesville for five Cents of Salts. Our money was done. The Sicknefs proved to be Auga & feaver. I contined worse. My little daughter, Dorothy, was seased with the Auga at the same time. I just been four day at work. Got one days pay. A bad fix. Corn Meeal, our common diet. I never was in suh a fix before. Every day worse. We sent for Docter Alowek. He attended us about twelve weeks but to no effect. I sent to R. Keey for my wages but in vain.

Our Settustion at this time was bad enough. We sold what we could to get medeson and a little chang from corn meel. Cold wether put in. Our log cabin was in bad order for the Sam fire wood was bad to get. My wife was week from the treatment she receved when in her sick Bead. We were mostly confined to our bead.

My wife, fore three weeks had to go and hunt up fire wood, the snow up to her ancles, her shoes was wore out. Therefore, she had to put on my big mud boots. She did her best to make our present setetation as good and beoyened my expations, mor then I thought a woman was able to doe, giving suck to her baby, excesting upon corn meel. Truely these is pretty tring times to be in the medist of proffessed Brethern & Sisters.

My wife applyed to F. Daves to bring her a load of fire wood, but in vain. Likewise, to Samuel Brown, but in vain. Our money was done. They would not creadet us, unfeeling, unhumain. Br.

treasure up in your barn from moths and rust. No, you have treat me as unworthy. Brother, I am redused to extreem poverty. We are out of fire wood.

I remain --

Yours truly,
Wm Knox

This letter made Bishop Bawn very uneasy. He stood up in the meeting, as I was corretely informed, and told the people that that fellow, Knox, had sent him such a safsey (sassy) letter, but did not read it to the congrotation.

Next day, he went from house to house exposing my safsey letter, but still never read it, saying, if I sent aney more the like, he would not give us aney more. He never was man enough to bring a charg against me, nor fase me. Truly, both me & my famely might starved to death for out he cared.

Br. D. Carter called into our house to see our state of poverty, made my case known in the meeting. This was a great act of kindnefs. Got up a free-will offring. Brought nearly all the Elders of Carterville.

To return to my History which I have neglected for some time. We were so redused to poverty that we thought it wisdom to return to St. Louis again in the month of May. I sold my little place for Fifteen Dollars, likewise Cow and Calf Fifteen Dollars. Got to St. Louis the latter end of May 1/51. I still felt very week. I was about two months idle. I got work at Belshers Shugger House, one Doller and quarter per Day. Nothing pculer happened to us only that the felt-effects of the winter's sicknefs.

In December, the Doctrine of Getheren, or making preparations for the fowlling Spring, begaun to be Preached up for so many to joeen in together. Likewise, wheel barrows and Hand Carts.

I made an agreement with Brother Robert Nelson to make every effort for us to endeavour to crofs the plains in the fowlling Spring to the great Salt Lake Velly. About Christmis we bought a broken-down waggon for ten Dollars. The agreement that I made with Br. Nelson, each to pay the half and he to hold the candle (the word "candle" was clearly written) for me to repair the waggon.

All things went on pretty well. A good deal said about the Wheel Barrow & Hand Cart Train. Some profered the Hand Cart, but this came of at nothing. They found that it would not answer.

Some time in March, when I thought that I would be able to make a fit-out to start in the Spring, here I was difsapointed. A large boyle made its appearence upon my left arm and could not work during the Spring. What money I had left, I bought a Cow and Calf for eighteen Dollars. In abought three weeks and cow and calf died. So ended the preparations of that time.

I thought it would be wisdom for Br. R. Nelson and me to desolve partener Ship, seeing that we could not accomplish what we desired. I gave him his choice, so, he took the waggon. I went to work for short time. Got sick again. By this, the wether got warm. I lost nearly all this summer. I had one very bad speel, Billious Collice.

September. I went to work for Boomer Bredge Builders. Emma Josephine Knox born on the 18 of December, 1852, at St. Louis. At this time, I am of work -- Byols on my hand. I have been of 8 weeks. I will pafs over.

Juenerly the 1 -- 1853 -- Not much of emportence, but the old thing think over again -- Sicknefs. My wife all winter and still contun.

Juenerly the 1 -- 1854 -- In March, I left Stone & Boomer work and went to work at a new Steeam Boat. Here I got the Auge. My wife still sick. I was of a short time, but got better again. I was very poor at this time. I had Docter Olephant, one Doller a visit, beside medesons.

I just had been at woork on week. I cut my foot with the ax. We sold the best of our Furneter. We were very poor. I was eight weeks of with my foot and paying eight dollars per month for House rent on main St. between Floriad and Collumbia St. My foot got better and I went to work at Stone Boomers again. Moved to 10 St. on Chambers St. 5 Dollers per month.

May and June pafsed on, but gitting very hot.

July -- Very hot. Another acedent. A large piece of Bridge timber fell acrofs both of my feet and disabled me from work.

On the 22 of August, 1854, my youngast Daughter, Emma Josephine Knox, died and was burried in the Methodest burring ground.

September -- I got to work again. At this time, I was to go to the Merrie Mack River Sulphur Springs but I was counceled not to go. I obeyed the same. I thought prehaps my luck might change. The reson for this Council, one of the twelve apostles of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, Erastus Snow, and one of the Presidents of the Corms of the Seventy, Milo Andrus, they having come from the Great Salt Lake Velley to Preside over the Church in this part of the Countery.

Councell is for all the Saints to renew there Covenant by purefy themselves and re Baptism. These men has brought a good Spirit with them to be obeadent to the Councell of these men of God. Likewise, doing my farist works and humbling myself before my God, I went forth and was re Baptised for the remesing of my sins by Elder R. Windly and was confirmed by the water's side, Sept. 21, 1854. So, to endeavour to carrie out the Councils of these men of God, I went down into the watter and reBaptised the fowlings persons:

My wife the first, Elisabeth Knox.
 Re Bapt Joseph King.
 Re Bapt Hennery Nisonger, confirmed the same.
 Wm Morrison re Bapt.
 Patience Hampton re Bapt.
 Mary Hampton re Bapt.
 Mary Strickland re Bapt.
 Elisabeth Restall re Bapt.
 Mary Ann Boot and confirmed.
 Annes Hampton re re Bapt.
 James Meek re Bapt & conf.
 Robert Comish re Bapt.
 John Comish re Bapt.
 Enoch Bouny re Bapt.
 Robert Hill re Bapt.
 John Bodfish re Bapt.
 Matthew Cyphris re Bapt. & Confirmed Jane Ramsden re Bapt.
 Mary Ann Cyphris re Bapt.
 Elisabeth Odell re Bapt.
 Henry Jones re Bapt.
 Chas H Jones re Bapt.
 Jane Jones re Bapt & Confirmed.

(Written on the side of this page he writes: To save the Church from expence I made a Chist, 6-6" long, worth about \$10, to keep the sacerment things in.)

Ann Hutchins re Bapt.
 Caroline Wilmott re Bapt & confirmed.
 Sarah Littlewood re/B. and confir.
 Clara Bennington re/B & Confir.
 James Windley re Bapt. & Confir.
 Mary Meek re Bapt.
 Matthew Meek re Bapt.
 John Meek re Bapt.
 William Ranesell re Bapt.
 Richard Garsting re Bapt.
 James Cooper re Bapt.
 Robert Watson re Bapt.
 John Burolen re Bapt.
 Lucy Roberts re B & Confirm.
 Samuel Rollings re B & confir.
 Ann Foxley re B & Conformed.
 Elisabeth Carral Original Baptsm.
 Sarah A Cant r Bapt.
 Ellen Howard re Bapt.
 Sarah Odell re Bapt.
 Elisabeth Bonney re Bapt.
 Sarah Howard re Baptised.
 Ann Hutchins Sener Original.
 My Daughter (Dorothy Knox) re Bapt.
 Wm Comish re Bapt.
 Joseph Jones re Bapt.

Edward Wilson re Bapt.
 Jane Bodfish re Bapt.
 Mary Ann Howard re B & conf.
 Jane Clegg re B & Confirm.
 John Clegg re Baptised
 Henery Noysonger re B & Confir.
 Walter Huish re B.

November 2, 1854 --

re B. Richard Moyle
 re B. & Conf. Randall Moyle
 re B. & Confir. Robert Windley Juner.

November the 4 - 1854 -- Setterday is Conference. President Snow opened the Conference. It comenced on Setterday morning. Few atended. He, Snow, said that every man that had losed this Day on account of the Conforence should gain four foold ? more. This Conference pafsed of good. Saint Loues is now a Stake of Zion.

I have agreed to pay my Tithing from this 4 of November 1854. I have relised the fulfillment of Brother Erastus Snow prophesy for I got Sixteen Dollars for that Br. Snow Said Should come to pafs before the conglaton. I now belong to the Elders Corm. Robert Windley, President -- Br. Barker and Br. Dow counselors.

Dec. 2 - 1854 -- At a meeting of the Elders Corm, I was appointed together with Brother J. Powell to got to Preach at Centerveelle, Ill. We fulfilled our mission and returned on the 4 of Decomber. All well. Brother James Kinney treat us very kindly. This is the first missing that I have had since I left England excepting doing my duty as a visiting that I have done as far as oppertunety and health would permite.

Junery 1 the 1855 -- New Years Day. I accompyed by Br. J. Powell went to Illonois and spent the day in the work of our Lord, attending to re Baptisms. William Gore, one of the high Council and me or myself.

(Up-side-down on top of page 284, Wm Knox has written this:
 "To asist in the work of the Lord and to be obedent to his servant, Erastus Snow, I handed over \$6 for three papers he is about publish St. Louis Lumanspary.)

Re Baptised about twenty four. We striped of our Clothes and in decency went into the water but it was very cold. The most of the candates were Femeales, so I led them into the water and Br. William Gore Baptised and I took them to the shore in safty, but it was a very cold jobe. So, all was done in safty.

Returning, two Elders meet us and they wanted to be Baptised, but they were twoo late to go acrofs the Rever again. Brother Wm Gore, he had the charge of the Baptisms. He told me to Baptise these two Elders my self so Br. J. Powell accomped us to a pound of watter. Br. Powell prayed at the water's edge that the Lord would

blefs and acknowledge our labers and ordnance of Bapts and so I striped of again but it was worse to put on the cloths that I had on two hours ago, being wet and cold. Yet, I rejoised in attending to this saccred ordnance. I re Baptised William M. Louis, re Baptised Thomas Herces Eders. Br. J. Powell wittnefs. Returned home about eight o'clock, being late. This is a pretty good days work for the first of this year.

Junery the 3, 1/55 -- I went to work at a Bredge on the County road about two miles past Graviouse, about $8\frac{1}{2}$ miles out of St. Louis. We finesed on the 14.

(In very small letters, up-side-down, he writes this: "December the 14 1/54. Hamelton Creek Bridge, on the pereefse Railway was burned two days previous. I went acet wrought huing timber for the trucel work. On the 15, I wrouht all day and all neight till Saterday neight the 16. On the Sunday morning, I was obledged to lie in bed all day".)

Junery the 18 -- 1855 -- This day I went to Stone & Boomer's office conserning my wages. Times is very hard to git money. He wanted to take down my wages to \$175 Cents per day. Two Dollars was the wages previous. I told him to place himself in my shoes and see how he would like it & I agreed to take the 1.75 if he would pay me when he had no work for me. He aggreed to the same.

I have not done much this week but clean out the shope and attend at the office. I have payed my Tything for what I have receved since Conference \$64 D, making \$6.40 for Tithing. I, likewise, gave Br. Milow Andrus 2 Dollars. One of them I gave him, the pay I had not previous. I, likewise, gave Br. Hart one Doller to afsist Brother Snow. The Lord has blefsed me for asisting his servents.

Junery the 21 -- Sunday. This is a very stormey day. I went dow to Church. Br. Milo Andrus in comencen his subject, he said that it was in the scriptures some way that the Lord said shall I find faith on the earth when I come. Br. Andrus thought that he would for he, himself, was agreebly difsapointed to find so great faith in St. Louis, not expecting to see aney of the Saints turn out, it being so very corse. His subject was over anecesty in the Saints to git knowledge and not seeking the gift of wisdom to use what we have got. This is a heavy storm.

Junery the 23 -- This day, I was enformed that a Boat load of Saints was at the leavy, St. Louis. I took four into my hous. I, likewise, went down to see the setuation that the poor saints were in. I felt for them --- the coldnefs of the Day. Went I got there, the most of them were desposed of. Br. Milo Andrus superentending the same. As sone as he saw me, he said, "Br. Knox, will you help a sick sister of the boat?" "Yes sir, was my reply."

I helped to put her cloths upon her and carried her to the bagge car. In this car, there laid a young man, sick, not able to move and two of this women's children sitting crying, both with sicknefs

and cold. I had very peculiar feelings. It brought all the seems that I had pafsed through into my mind. I could have giving vent to a flood of tears, and could scarce keep from it.

I got into the carr two or three times and claped the poor little creators and told them that they soon would be at home. At this time, I did pray to my Heavenly Father for the poor saints that had to come up to Mount Zion. I have attended this neight at my hom and mad glad. Br. Snow couneled the Corm of Elders to wach and teach and benefit the Saints, more especely the new comers. Agreed to doe so.

Junery the 24 -- This neight I have opend my house for a prayer meeting to be held every Weddensday neight, comencen at seven o'clock. Br. Cantwell, one of the High Priests has the charge of the same. We have had a good meeting and enjoyed much of the spirit of God.

Junery the 26 -- I thought it proper to record the names of these Saints that landed in this city St. Louis from England that I took into my House: William Davis from Leicester Breanch of the Church of Jesus Christ of Letter Day Saints, his wife, Sarrah Davis and Mary Poustwhet & Mary Linge.

Junery the 27 -- This neight I got employment for Sarrah Davis.

Junery the 28 -- Sabbeth morning. Last neight, or this morning, I dremt a dream that I was in compeny with E. Snow and M. Andrus. I beheld Brother Snow contending with some that belonged to the Church. He gained the fictory. He whaped one of them and then knocked down another, jumped upon him and beat him with fists and hands. The man had a belt of lether that went about his waist with a buckle at the end of it. He. Bro. Snow, took the belt and floged the man on his back and another man poured on water at the same time. Bro. Snow seemed to be in a tearble rage.

After he was done, Bro. Snow knelt down upon his knees and prayed. I thought that I had some talk with Br. Andrus about the same. I had some peculiar work to doe in conection with Bro. Snow and Andrus. I don't recloet the rest.

I awoke and told my wife my dream. Shortely after, Brothers Cantwell & Morrison called and told me that I was requested to be at the Church all day to attend a meeting of the High Councel -- that mesurs were about to be, or entered into, to prune the tree. I attended Brothers Snow and Andrus together with the High Councels, called a few of the most faithful Elders together to be watchman, or polesman, or teacher or Fathers to the saints in this St. Louis Stake of Zion.

I told Bro. Milo Andrus my dream. In the midst of his teachings to us that composed the afsembely of Elders, he said that Bro. Knox had dremt a true dream -- that they had enemes, fals Brethern. He wanted the Elders see to it. Bro. E. Snow told us that, if we were faithful in this thing, that we would be advanced in the Preisthood and blefsed ourselves. Likewise, to this Stake of Zion.

By this time, I clearly perceived that my dream was about to be fulfilled. Their teachings were to the point, caused my heart to rejoice. I was first on the list for the sixth ward, J. Powell, my Partner.

The meeting was adjourned until the Saturday following ---- the mean time, to commence our duty to enter the Field and face the enemy, comfort the weak, bind up the broken hearted, act in secret when required, likewise, in Public. Our district is Leabam St. to the Stergon Market North of St. Louis. This is the dinner that was giving to us. This meeting adjourned. The afternoon meeting commenced. Br. E. Snow lectured on Fals Brethern.

Junery the 29 -- Monday -- This night, I have commenced on my duty and have visited one of our Brethern that is in doubtful standing. I have invited him to come to the meeting that is in my house. I see and feel that he is on the back ground.

Junery the 30 -- I have attended the meeting of the Elders Corm. The President asked who would volunteer to go to Bell founting on Sunday to Preach. I volunteered. Brother Thomas C. Armstrong volunteered to go with me.

February the 4, 1855 -- This is a fast Day to fast and pray. This morning Bro. T.C. Armstrong accompyed me to Bellfounting and fulfilled our mifsion. I was the seener Elder, consequently, I persided.

The meeting was held in Bro. Hunpher's House. I asked Elders Hunpheres if there was any organization here now. He said, "No". I asked him who persided here in those meetings. He said that he did. I was moved upon to ask this and see how matters stood in this place, for it was once a Breanch ameanable to the sixth ward Breanch in the old organization. Elder Humphera, the Preisedent, I showed him that it was not his pogetive to perside over those meetings unless he had been set apart or comisioned by the first Presidancy under this new organization for all things had become new.

We were sent to teach the words of Elders Snow and Andrus which are the words of God. Elder Thomas C. Armstrong said that it was a correct Principle that I had laid before them. It was not to assume any superiority over them but for the sake of order. Likewise, I felt that we might have full power over every Spirit and teach freely what we had received and endeavoured to carry out the Spirit of our President and, likewise, the power. This was all done in the Spirit of meekness. The congregation felt the same.

I called upon Elder H. to open the meeting. Likewise, Elder Thomas C. A. to address the meeting which he did in Fatherly way, touching upon the duty of the Saints. Likewise, Elder H. spoke some good things. I felt it my duty to teach them that it was time to lay aside drinking whisky and all strong drink and to practise the Word of Wisdom.

I told them that I was not ashamed to teach that doctrine, that I practised myself. A large portion of the good spirit of our God

was in our midst. All appered to be well setefised so we returned safe home. The destence is about 4 miles.

Febuary the 12 -- This Day Brother Henery Nisonger came to my House. It was a very rainy Day. He told me that he was going to try to git me to the velley of the Great Salt Lake. This was at dinner time. He told me, if I could git a waggon, that he would let me have two yok of Oxen and that I could go with him to the Mermace and hall fire wood until the time of starting. I felt to embrafs this oppertunety, so I left work and went down to see Elder Snow and Elder Andrus about it. They said I was to go and I would be blefsed.

Brother Nisonger asked Brother Snow if he could have me a waggon. He said that he would sell me a one. Brother Nisonger bought a waggon of Brother Snow on creadet to be paid on the first April, Sixty Dollars. I went out to the Merame with Brother Nisonger that same day. Next day, we went to Judg Heggans. That is the man that Brother H. Nisonger halls cord wood for. He gave me leberty to come into one of his houses, a old shanty.

Febuary the 13 -- This day I have returned home. While riding on the railroad in the cars, my employer, George Boomer, happened to be in the same car. I did not expect to see him there. Neither did he expect to see me. He expected that I would be at work. He had been away for some time upon busnefs. I was rater in a fix what to say.

Wile I praayed to my heavenly Father for what to say, this came to me. First, to tell him the simple truth, so I did. I told him that I had left my native Countery, England, for the gosple sake, to go to the Great Salt Lake Velly and now it is six years since and I have been very unfertnet and never able to make a fit-out. I have done the best that I could. I have been out at Sulfer Sprigs with a man that is going to lone me two yoke of oxen if I can git a waggon and go haling fire weed, the time of starting. Now, this is a good chanch and I feel to embrafs the same. I have been seeing after the same. This had a good effect. "Well Knox, I will see you before you go away."

Febuary the 14 -- This day I have been bufsey squaring up things as fast as I could and payed up tithing, five Dollars for my property and six dollars and ten cents tithing on my labour. Now, I am clear paid up to this date on tithing.

February the 15 -- This day I have taken the waggon, a barrl Flower and twenty four pound of baccon, a bag of potatoes to the railroad depot. They cost seventy five cents avrage. The barrel of Flour, eight dollers and seventy five cents -- the baccon ten cents per pound --- Potatoes one doller and seventy five cents per bushell. We have given maney things that belongs to house keeping away --- could not sell them. I left my watch and two tool chests with Brother John Powell for him to despose of them the best that he could.

The 17 -- This day I moved my wife and children and som furnuter and provesons and the cat to the railleway. I agreed with a English Brother that was out of work and could not git aney. He had just come from England. He is a wever - stocken wever, for ten dollers per month and board washing and for the first month to help me to fill the waggon with fire wood. His (name) Joseph Miles.

We landed all safe and cleaned out the old shanty and then dedecated the old Shanty to be a house of prayer according to the Councell of Brother Erastus Snow.

February the 28 -- Sunday morning and now living upon the banks of the Meramec rever opset the Sulfer Spring. Br. Henery Nisonger and myself went to Menchester, the destence is about five miles, and preached to a congation. I beleve that we are the forst Elders that ever Preached in this place. We had a little opetion but I put it to a vot whether we were to come back again. It was carried on our side so we made an apointment to meet at the same place two weeks today and returned safe home.

After supper, I Preached in Br. Nesonger's and exorted the Saints to attend to all there famely dutes. There is three Female of us here. This endeth the firs Sunday in our new lockation.

February the 20 -- This day Br. Nisonger and my self went off again and traveled all day nearly, in sarch of another yoke of oxen. We found a yoke. The man was to bring them on Thursday.

February the 21 -- I have comenced to make a fraim, or a wood rack, to put upon the waggon to hall the wood.

The 22 -- Thursday -- The oxen has come.

February the 24 -- Sunday. This day I told my Brethern that it was good for us to meet and pertake of the sacerment which we did. They never had aney before in this place.

26 -- Monday. The arraignments that Br. H. Misonger made, or altered, that I was to work for him until we started and he would furnesh us with all things nefsalary for the jurney and, likewise, provisions while in this place, wittnefs Joseph Miles. I am halling wood, driving the oxen.

February the 28 -- We have filled up the place where the wood lies and broke one of the Spocks of the hind wheels.

March the 1 -- This day I am at yoke making. I made three yokes.

March the 4 -- Sunday. This day Br. H. Nisonger and my self went to Menchester accordend to apppointment and preached to pretty good Congration. I felt good and asked the Congration if they would that we should come back again. I called for a vote and all hands was raised but one, an old women Catholic. We made another appintment two weeks and returned safe home and held a meeting in Br. H. Nisonger's house.

March the 5 -- We are chopping cord wood.

March the 9 -- I have comenced to put Br. H. Nisonger's waggon Bead to right.

March the 10 -- This neight I have sole one of our bead steads chich cost us four and half Dollars for three and quarter.

March the 11 -- Sabeth. I Preached to the Saints in Brothers Pearse House. After the same, I Baptised John Hirom Donnellon. He was an Elder but, through trangrefson, he delevered up his lisens to E. Snow, one of the twelve Apostles. He humbled himself and rote to E. Snow and got an answer for me to Baptise him, which I did. Likewise, Baptised Edwin Pearch orignell. Likewise, Chester Nisonger, orignell, Sarrah Jane Nisonger. We held a meeting in Brother Nisonger's and I preached and Confirmed them that I had Baptised in the Meramac River.

March the 12 - Monday -- This day I have made a Chest to pack in Br. Nisonger's waggon.

Tusday the 13 -- This day I have made another Chest for the same. While at work Br. H. Nisonger asked me if I would not like to stope and not go to the Salt Lake. He said that we could git perhaps a good house to live in. This he has spoken about two or three times which caused me to think that I was about to be deived again after selling all off at lefs then half and quarter price, besides working for nothing and Boarding a man to work for Br. H. Nisonger, and all for nothing.

I told him that I would rather go back to Saint Louis and work for one Dollar per Day before that I would Stope upon such a unhealthy place, for a man should die upon such a place, having means to gether he would go to Heal. He said that he would not stope upon these Bottoms. I felt very much disetifised all this day. At neight I told my wife about it. She felt the same.

Weddensday the 14 -- I felt to have a better understanding for I felt that I was lofsing confidence and begining to think hard things for I had not sought after Br. Nisonger to pan my self upon him, but he sought me.

This morning Br. H. Nisonger came to my house, this being a wet morning, so I thought it my duty, as a Saint of God, before a wittnefs, Joseph Miles, to tell him my mind, which I did in the Spirit meeknefs.

He said that he was very sorry that I had taken it so. He only ment to try me. He was as firm as ever and never intended to deceve me, nor never would for if he could not go away, he would give me the two yoke of Oxen and waggon and find me with Provisions. He said that I might have a writing agrement to this if I chosed. He shaked hands with me in presence of Joseph Miller. All was squared up in a good spirit and Br. Joseph Miller to go and Board with Br. H. Nisonger, making bows for the wagon, likewise yoke bows.

March the 15 -- Working at Br. Nisonger's waggon, it began to snow. Had a meeting in Br. Pearces. I Preached to the saints.

March the 16 -- It thundred and Lightned, snowed and rained. I comenced to make my waggon bead but had to quit becaus I was sick.

March the 17 -- Blowing a gale of wind from the west. We could not git the stove to burn. The House filled full of smock. We had to move into a little log house, all the fillings peices out, no dore, the fire place nearly down. Hang up quilts round abut to keep the wind of. I am still sick. The wind sesed. Got into the house at neight.

March the 18 -- Sunday. This is the day to go to Menchester to Preach. I am better but don't feel it wisdom to go. I got Br. Joseph Miles, he is a Priest, to go in my room, together with Br. H. Nisonger.

March the 19 -- I am some better and been working at the waggon Bead.

March the 20 -- This morning I have comenced haling wood. My leaders is not well broke. Requires a great deal of pations to wind them rounq tree stumps. Hah and gee -- the turns has to be so short. This is quit a new traid to me, not withstanding it newness. I can see that I can "Hah" and "gee" as good as, and better then can be expected. I go to it just the same as it was my traid.

In the morning when I rise from sleep, I kneel with my Femely and return thanks for the past neight, pertion and askes my Father in Heaven to blefs my self and femely, the oxen, keep the wagon from giting broke.

March the 22 -- Still Halling. This neight Br. H. Nisonger brought the news from St. Louis. Br. E. Snows Councell for him not to go to the Velly yet, but to go to Kensefs. I expect that we will go there, along with him, to asist to build up a place for gethering, even a Stake of Zion. This neight we heald a meeting in Brothers Perses House. There is three Elders and one Preist. There is no orgnation in this place but still we meet together. They look to me to be the leader. I doe my best to encoureg the Saints of God to keep the commendments and live by every word that proseed from God.

March the 24 -- Still halling. The oxen is getting better, or enproving. They were poor when we got them. I have taken great paines to try to improve them. My wife bakes Corn Bread for the Oxen. I think that the Bowes that goes into the yoke is a little short. This neight I have mad them a little longer. I think this is the reson that makes them run round when going up the hight bank with a heavy load. The Bow chocks them.

March the 25 -- Sunday. This day we held a meeting in my house and pertake of the sacermant and on the evening in Br. Josiah Pearces house. In going to the meeting. Bro. Henery Nisonger told

me that he wanted me, in the morning, to make another arangment. I did not know what to think about another fresh bargan for, as a Saint of God, I expected that the Bargan that he made on the 14 before a witnefs, Joseph Miles, was suficient. The day previous, he had been at St. Loues and seen E. Snow which caused him, or he thought that Br. E.S. wanted him, or Councled him, to go to Kenfses to bofs, or carrie, or be the leading man and, in the meeting, he said, "If Br. Knox will go with me, he would give me all that I wanted." I told the Br. Nisonger and the Saints, while I was Preaching, that where ever Br. E. Snow counsell me to go, there I will go.

March the 26 -- Monday morning. Another fresh bargan. He complained poverty and told me to be easy with him. He wanted to sell me the wagon and oxen for what they cost him. The wagon bean month at work, the spoke broke out of one of the hind wheels. All this at his work. He alowed me forty dollars for my work. This is not acquevelent to what is right for he was the caus of me making the sacerfise of about one Hundred dollars.

I just let him have the bargan all his own way for he had changed so much and complained poverty. He gave me twenty dollars to draw upon Br. Dow and twenty dollars in part payment. I took, or wrote, a copy of the agreement.

March the 16, 1855 -- St. Louis County Mo. -- Twelve month after date, I promise to pay to the barrer eighty nine Dollars and fifty cents to Wm Knox.

March the 26 - 1855 -- Two years after date, I promise to pay to the barer, eighty nine dollars and fifty cents. After this, I went down, Wm Knox, to St. Louis and went to Br. Dow and presented the twenty Dollar note. He said that it was not due until April. This was to git groseray and corn meeal for the oxen. I was a little put abut such proceedings. I got what I wanted at my old grosers.

I called at Br. J. Powell. I left my watch and two tools chests to get sold before I left. No sale. He gave me a pair of mole skin pants. I slept at Br. Boadfishs. Going home, I called at Br. Dow's. He said that he had pitton me and gave me the twenty Dollars. I went and paid my groseries.

March the 28 -- This is the first day upon my own hook and halled swin load. Br. Nisonger sold me the noat that Br. Dow said was not due. Br. Dow eigher had been mistaken or wilfully told a lie.

March the 29 -- Halled 5 load. Haled a meeting in Br. Peries. I preached the necesety of the Saints paying there Tithing.

March the 30 -- Halled loads 8.

The 31 -- Setterday. Halled 4 loads.

April the 1, 1855 -- Sunday. I was writing my history. I felt very sick. I got Elder J.H. Donnelon to lay hands on me. I feel asleep and got some better and attended our meeting at neight.

The following dates were not in order in the diary

April the 5 -- I meet with the Saints and preached the nefsety of paying there Tithing. Likewise, if they wanted to be saved to asist to publesh the Gosple and they could doe it by subcrebing for the "luminey" and asisting Br. E. Snow. I told them that I sent the gosple to England every week, and ordained John H. Donnellon to the office of Elder March the 29.

April the 7 -- This day we are don halling wood. I payed my man 13 Dollars and 10 Cents.

April the 4 -- This neight, the shanty that we live in was shaken by an Earth quake.

April the 8 -- Sunday. I went down to St. Louis. The Conference comenced on the 6. I could not git. I was only at the fornone meeting. The railway Cars left St. Louis at 3 P.M. I rejoiced to hear Br. E. Snow Preach the same kind of Doctring that I taut.

On the 5 -- The very same Saints were there to hear for themself. Just as I got to the depot, the carrs started and left me. They had to call at station about one quarter of a mile ahead. I felt determend to catch up if I could, so I run as fast so I could. It was rainig and very slippery. I fell down amongst the mud. I got up again, looked at my self all mud. I had no time to clean my self for the iron horse was roling along. A Irish man seed me fall. He cried out, "Run or the Iron horse will beat you."

There was some peculer thoughts pafsing in my mind during this race. To give up, I was sure to lose. To run to the end, or the Station, I had a chance, so I continud to run as fast as I could and prayed to my Heavenly Father that I might sused. I did so and got safe home.

April the 9, 1855 -- At half past eleven A.M., I delevered my wife a child. Her name is Mary Ann Knox. We did relise the answer to the Prayer when I laid my hands upon my wife Head. After all was over and all right, I sent my little daughter, Dorothy, for Mfs. Nisonger or a Docter. I would had to go about four miles, besides pay about ten dollars. At this time, I could not doe it. My wife told them that all way right, to look upon the bed foot and they would find. So, the washed and drefsed the poor little baby.

April the 11 -- This day, I went to Menshester for the iron work that belongs to the wagon bed, but did not get them. After the same, I sent to St. Louis for them.

April the 14 -- This day I have got the Iron work.

April the 19, 1855 -- This Day, I left this place, Sulfur Spring, in company with Bro. Nisonger and Bro. Perce, bound for G.S.L City. We had to cross the Mermac River. The garrige cost 80 Cents, 30 Cents for towl, 75 Cents for feed. Rained all Day and, at Neight, about eight o'clock, we stoped at a farm for all neight on Menchester road and paid 75 Cents for hay. It was very uncomfortable for my wife and little baby.

April the 20 -- Got into Saint Louis before dinner and sold my cooking stove for five Dollars. It was worth twelve but I was short of money.

Bro. Snow Blefsed my little Daughter, Mary Ann Knox. I told Bro. Snow that I did not know how to doe for I had not money enough to pay my expences up through Mifsouri for hay and corn is very high price. He said, "Bro. Knox, go on and you wile git what you want upon the road, but don't steal." This is what he said to me. I knew that what he had saed prevous had come to pafs. I beleved him in this thing. Likewise, I kept an count of all that I laid out but I forget to set down the full amount of money that I had when I started. I think it was some way about 30 dollars.

I have paid a back bill to the grouer 19 Dollars, 25 cents for butter, 25 cents hand bason, 250 cents for pants, for hay and oats 140 cents, 400 cents corn meal, 120 cents for shorts ("shorts" is a bran), 30 cents Olive oil, 15 Cents for sasage, a blank book and two pencils 40 cents to keep my rection on the way, 60 cents for Showes Soling. We left Saint Louis April the 21 at twelve o'clock.

25 Cents for the naturel Brigde towl. We paed 25 cents again for towl and camped for the neight. Got 100 pound of Hay, 180 cents per hundred.

April the 22 -- Sunday morning, we offered up prayer and enjoyed our selvs all day.

April the 23 -- This morning, we afsembled ourselvs together and prayed and started of. We came to the Rever Mifsouris and crofssed. Paid 100 cents for ferrage. Pafsed through Cattlevill, 10 miles from Saint Charls. Four miles further, we got hay 100 cents per hundred and pafsed threw Plantersburgh, 6 miles from Cattlevill. Here, one of my oxen gave out. Something happend his off fore leg. I had to take him out and got one yoke of Bro. Perces. I began to think that bad luck was still my lot, but I said nothing to that affect, but seceretly prayed for my ox.

We had not got above one mile on our way after this happened, I seed a man riding upon a Horse driving a yok of oxen. I said to my self that I would like to have them. When he came up, I asked him if he would swap. He said, "yes." After a little, I got his oxen by paying him two Dollars. It was to two and a half. I told him how I was for money. He returned the half Dollar back.

His oxen was so wild that he could not doe aney thing with them. His oxen was twenty Dollars better then mine. Here did the Lord blefs me. In this, all the company seed the hand of this. 75 cents for oats, 20 cents for Eggs.

The 25 of Aprile -- Pafsed through Warington. Distance from Plantervell 25 miles.

26th -- Hay 75 Cents, Corn one Dollar, Butter 15 Cents.

27th -- 40 Cents for oats.

April the 29 -- Sunday. Rest all Day.

30th -- Monday. We renewed our journey and Camped 137 miles from Saint Louis. One Dozen of oats 40 cents. (How do you buy oats by the dozen? However, this is clearly what he wrote. It probably should have been "one dozen ? , oats 40 cents.) This is all we could get for 14 head of cattle.

May the 1 -- We renewed our journey. I got 50 Cents of oats. Pafsed through Town of Columba at 8 $\frac{1}{2}$ o'clock A.M. The distance from Williamsburgh 26 miles. It rained pretty fast and we stoped about 3 miles out of Cloumba. Paid 25 cents for feed and 15 cents for butter. It cleared up about 12 o'clock and we renewed journey and Camped about miles out of Cloumba. Got 4 Dozen of Eggs for 25 Cents.

May the 2 -- Paid 60 Cents Pasturage. Two of our company is Sick. We anointed them with oil in the name of the Lord and laid hands upon them and retired to rest.

May the 3 -- Paid for Pastuareg 60 cents. Pafsed through Fayette, Howard County, 25 miles from Columba. 8 o'clock A.M. pafsed through Glasgo, 13 miles from Fayette, and camped pretty late. 15 cents for toll.

May the 4 -- 30 Cents for Pastuage, 75 Cents for Ferry. If we had taken the Kitsville road, we would have saved this Ferrage and not pafsed through Glasgo. We did not know untill two late. This is Carrlton County.

About nine o'clock this morning, while I was driving my teem through a wood about seven miles from Glasgo, a large Breanch fell down from a tree and struck me upon the left shoulder. I fell down upon my knees. I was so stupefyed with the strock, it being so sudden and so powerful, my senses was nearly taken from me. I tried to recover my self two or three times, not known what was the mater. There was not aney wind at the time. It appeared to have been newly ranched off from the tree. The Brethern anointed me and laid hands upon me. I went to bed very sick. If it had struck my head, it have killed me, no doubt.

Som of the Brethern drove my teeam. I recovered in a shoart time that I was able to drive my team. My Shoulder was sore hurt. The skin was peeld of and my hand likewise. We got out of our way about half mile.

We took a road that led us down to the River. We camped for a short time and feed our cattle. Us going out of our way and having to turn back again caused the words of Bro. Erastus Snow, one of the Twelve apostles that orgnised the Stak of Zion in Saint Louis to be fulfilled. He told me that we would make up to a small Company of Saints that started two Days before us, two mules, one Powney, one wagon, ten Souls, Bro. Young Blood and three neeces and two Bros Horns and femly from Alabama.

We camped for the neight.

I had all the jurney felt ancous to git all the Brethern to be more delegent to the dutys that is devolving upon us --- to have ourselves orgnesed in a proper manner, to have a wach over our Cattle. This neight, I asked the Brethern if it would be better to set a wach over our Cattle. I asked two or three times. My shoulder was so sore from the blow that I had got previous that I was not able to wach my Cattle. I called them together and knelt down and returnd thanks to our Heavenly Father. After the same, we went to seek up the Cattle, to git them to gether, but we were desapointed in this. The Cattle had got out of our sight so all hands had to turn out to seek them.

In abot two hours, the Cattle was got together. By this time, I felt pretty sore, or nearly dne up from the blow that I had received previous. The Brethern did not seem to have much felling for my misfortune. They had had not much experence in the Kingdom of God. Still, I felt determand to Preach up Brotherly Kindnefs and order that the Blefsing of God might rest upon us and our Cattle. They told me that nieght go to bed and they would keep watch. I did so.

May the 5 -- This morning when I awoke, all the cattle gone, or lost, but two, and a dissetfised spirit, or the Devel, amongst the Brethern. I was glad, in a measure, that this had happened, providing we git them again. I told the Brethern that this had hapend unto us to teach us to be more delgent in serving the Lord.

All hand went out to hunt the Cattle but could not find them. We scattered ourselvs again into the woods upon the Banks of Mefsouree, but in vain. Returned to camp again.

I told the Brethern and Sisters that it would be good for us to afsemble our selvs together and Kneel down upon the grafs and I prayed. We made another start of to seek the oxen again. As we was seeking, one of the oxen hard us speeking. He moved out as much as to say, "We are here." The woods was thick, besides the under Brush and it a strange place and like to lofs our selves. We found them all. They had strayed after water. We got to camp again. I told the Brethern and Sisters that the Lord delevered us again and it was our duty to return thanks. I preposed that the oldest man should be the mouth piece.

We renewed our Journey and passed through Brunswick Chardon, or Carlton County, 25 miles from Glasgow, and camped at the edge of the town. I told the Brethern that it would be good for us to have a Captain, or a President over the watch to look after the cattle and likewise a man to be our Chaplen, or Preist, and all to be done by drawing Cuts, or casting lots. The lote fell to Andrew Horn to be Capten of the watch, Jafse Youngblood, Preist. Previous to this I was every thing to the company or there nothing was done, so I thought it best to be orgnesed into some kind of shape. I pprosed in gitting this thing started.

May the 6 -- Sunday. We camped all Day and enjoyed ourselves and I expected that we would have no trouble about Hearing the Cattle but in this thing I was disapointed. I had Preached time and again the needsety of looking after our stake and not to be carlefs and endeferent on our journing up to Zion. The cattle got off again through carlesnefs. I again stood up in there medest and taught them order. Al tho we had ourselves orgnised yet I was constrained as an Elder of Isorell to teach the things that was nefsary. They still looked to me as before.

Monday the 7 -- We started and crofssed Crofses Ferry, grand Rever, two miles from town. One Dollar for the same. We begaun to travell again rejoceing. All things went well for that Day. We Camped at neight and sung a Hymn and prayer.

May the 8 -- Renewed our journey and passed through a town named Charlton, 22 from Brunswick. We passed two men upon Horses driving a negro woman, her hands fassed together. They were driving her just the same as she was a Cow or an ox. We camped at the first grove of timber 8 or 9 miles out of Town upon a mill stream, upon the right Hand side of the road. Pass this and there is no more water for twelve miles across the Prarey.

May the 9 -- We came to crooked Rever. We paid 40 Cents a team to cross a Bridge, Bufflow Bridge. We camped for the neight about 3 miles on the east side of Richmond. I Preached in a Brothers Hous. His name William Dawson, Ray County. It was proposed that I should Prside over the meeting. I called upon the Bro to bare there testmoney. They did so. We had a good meeting. They brought us Butter and milk and was very kind.

May the 10 -- We renewed our journey. Passed throug Richmond, 30 miles from Charlton. This is the town where the Whitmors lives that is wittnefs to the Book of Mormon. I had not time to call upon them. 25 Cents for Oats. We passed throug Elkhorn, 9 miles from Richmond. We camped at a place where there was no feed for our Cattle.

May the 11 -- This morning I went threw our Company and counceled with them to start before Brickfast and get to a place where there was feed for our Cattle. It was agreed for the grafs was only a few miles

ahead, but when we comenced to make ready, Brother T. comenced to cooking Brickfast. Here again, this contredectary spirit made manefast itself. I told them that it was our Salvation to get to the feed for our cattle and not to be eating ourselves and neglecting so great Salvaton. I had some pretty sharp words with some of them. Yesterday, we knew that we would have a long journey to perform, but when we came to Richmond, Bro. T. and H. stoped us one hour and half. This time, puting off unnefsarley wants have taken us to where there was feed. We started and came to a good place about half mile ahead, plenty of feed and water. We stoped and feed our Animals. We renewed our journey and camped for the neight. Heald a Councell meeting about starting in the morning. The first up to call upon and to feed where and when ever we came to it.

May the 12 -- We started before sun rise and pafsed Haynsville, 15 miles from Elkhorn and 25 miles from Richmond. The roads is very Hilley. We have halted about 3 miles out of Haynsvill to feed. Water is very scarce in this Country, about 2 miles further plenty of water. We got dinner water and pafsed on until we came to a creek and pasturage. Got water. 3 miles before we came to Plattburgh. We camped for the neight.

May the 13 -- Sabbeth morning. We are Camped for the Day. I Preached the nefsety of keeping the words of wisdom. Here we partook of the Sacerment for the first time upon our journey and enjoyed ourselves. I taut the necefsety of observing our orgnaisation more streetly.

May the 14 -- We pafsed through Plattsburg, the County Seat of Clinton, 12 miles from Haynsville. Pafsed through Rockhouse Prarey, 10 miles from Plattsburge and camped at Plattrever, 11 miles from St. Joseph. Bad grafs. I Preached to the saints the needsity of gitting a good understanding.

May the 15 -- We renewed our journey. No feed for the Cattle. We halted for dinner. Still no feed for the Cattle. Every thing burnt up for the want of rain. We have lost the road. Went two much north. We struck down to the bottom. Came back over and went down to Laws Ferry abut 16 miles below St. Joseph. We got hay, 45 butts, and camped all neight. We pafsed through Rushvill and got to Million's Ferry. We crofsted this Ferry just before dark. One dollar and ten cents for the same, and camped on the Atehence side amongst the saints. This endeth the Journey from St. Louis to the starting point for the Plains.

May the 17 -- There is a little sicknefs in camp and some deths.

May the 18 -- This morning I got 50 pounds of Corn Meal \$150, one bag of Shorts 80 pounds \$250 cents, 12 pounds of Bacon \$100. This Day I have got a letter from my Brother, John Knox, from England enforming me of the Deth of my Mother, Dorothy Knox, who departed this life at half past ten o'clock this morning, March the 5, 1855, and burried in Tweedmouth Church Yeard. The deses was water.

May the 19 -- This day we have moved to Mormon Grove about 4 miles from the Rever. Milow Andreus Presid over this Company. This place is like a little Town. Wagons and tents on each Side making a pretty Broad Street.

May the 20 -- Sunday. I enjoied my self hering the teaching of President Willow Andres.

May the 21 -- This day I have worked all Day at the Farm called the poor farm making Soad fence.

May the 23 -- This Day I have finished my stent or park which is five Roads in lngth. This was a tax or it was called the tole. Five Roads of Soad fencing upon the Poor Farm -- every man that was able, it was required of them. I payed my tol. I attended all the meetings hearing the dutys of a camp life. We were formed into a meletory Company with a Seargent to each company. My money was all done and nothing to bye my provisions for to crofs the Plains. I did not know how to doe.

May the 24 -- My way opend. A sister, Jane Macclaw agreed with me to go to the valley and gave me 39 Dollars and 90 Cents for her pafsage money. This is another Blefsing.

May the 29 -- Mr Andrews asked who would volenteer to yoke up and go to the rever and hall up the wagons and legges of the saints about five miles. I went twice.

May the 29 -- This day I went down to Ateeson and bought a Basket Bottle to carry water upon the Planes \$125 for the same, two tins to drink 5 cents each. Brother E Snow, one of the Twelve came into our Camp. It was dark. He gave us some teachings. It rained fast still we rejoyced to here him and see him. We could see him. He had a umbrell over his head and lantreen. He had the words of Eternell life and his words being so literly in me caused me to rejoyce.

May the 30 -- Wednesday. This morning we are called to gether and orgnesed into company. John Windly Capten of the firs fifty and then Capten of tens. John Singleton Capen of the ten that I belong to.

May the 31. This neight I have attended a sick Brother.

June the 1 - 1855 -- This Day we have of Camp about one mile and drelled for the first time. The Councell was for all to be well armed, a gun and power and Ball, for it was said that we would have to fight our way through the Indens. I had no gun, no power, no lead. I was again at my wits end. I prayed to the Lord to derect me, how to doe. The thought came into my mind to get as much freight to hall as would bye me a gun. I amedetely put this into execution. Got \$12 worth of freight and went and got a new Riffel. This was all done in a very short time. The Lord opend the way right before me in this thing. I was still at a lofs. I had got a Reffel but no powder, no caps, no lead. How was I to raes these? I was puffseld (puzzled) again. I had a Silver watch. I got Brother Andrews to actionerd of. He sold it for five and $\frac{1}{2}$ Dollars. This was not at velley but I did not care. I could get fittout. I gave Br Andrews 50 cents for his trouble. I have a Reffele and power and caps and lead. Previous to this Br Andrus asked me if I would hall him a Chest to G.S.L. City. I said I would. At this time I did not see my way clear for my oxen was light. My load seemed to be heavy enough for them with (out) taking aney freight, but Brother Andrus.. took

his chest back again and told me that he was just trying my liberalty. He said that he had tried me and found me liberal. He said, "Now Brothr Knox, this is just the same as if you had halled my Chest clear through. I felt thankfull that I had acted so but I had pafsed my word and I was bound to preform the thing if I had to throw my own things over board.

June the 2 -- I comenced to make the nefsary things in case a breck down -- Toungs, Couplings, pools, Axel & extery ones. Likewise a leaver to gress the axels, staks about two feet loing to drive into the ground to fafson (fasten) the Cattle at Neight at places where they could not be let loos. I cut my leg with the Adg.

June the 7 -- This morning we expected to start upon our journey but we were difsappointed in this. Orders was for us to go and plow up the poors Farm. I could not go but sent my Cattle. My leg was sore. It rained fast and very cold.

June the 8 -- This morning about ten oclock the train started, 51 fifty one waggons. We had not going two miles until Bro Peter Burgas Iron axel broak. We travled on until we came to Wallnut Creek, 36 miles from Fort Leavensworth and about 15 miles from Atchenson, and it was late when we camped. Some crofssed the creek. Br Greenwoods had one of his best oxen strangled by having one yoke tied with the hok on.

June the 9 -- This morning is very plesent. Elder Millow Andr preached his farewell sermon to us, that if we would not Profain the name of Jehova our God and be united, neither Indens nor Gentilles that had threatened our destruction had power to harm us and we should go through as well and better then any Company that had going prevous. It was Advertised in the paprs that the Indens would kill all the whites that crofssed or want to crofs the plains this year. We were trained to figh our way through. Br Andrews said that this Company had paid there tithing and had done there work at the poor farm, plowing, putting up the soad fence. He had great confedence in this compny if we rememberd his teaching. He was not afraid of Br Brigham Preaching the Tithing to us. We renewed our journey but very slow, temsters and oxen very green. We halted at Grafshopper Creek 5 miles from our starting place this morning. One Deth at this place. The Chollara seemed to be at this creek. I was herding my oxen. One of them groned out loud. I beleved it was taken with that desese. I took off my hat and hung it upon his horn and laid my hands upon him and rebucked the desese. He percked and got better right off. I felt thankful for this and was glad when we started again from this place. We travled abut 7 miles and Campe for the neight. At this place there was a written notice upon a tree. This is what was writing:

TAKE NOTICE MAY THE 22 - 1855. FRIENDLEY MORMONS WE DOE NOTIFY YOU NOT TO CAMP ON THE CHICKAPAE RIVER FOR WE WILL ALOW IT AT ALL. PLEAS TAKE WARNING. I THE CUEAF OF THE CHICKAPOE. GEORGE EHERY.

I kept the journell the whole way with pence. We had a good journey across. I lost one of my oxen. As there is prented (printed) guides to know the whole road, I fail to write all the pecnlers.

September the 3 -- Monday. This day we got into the Great Salt Lake City and camped in the sixth ward at Brother Silcock. We stoped in the wagon bead.

Tuesday Sepetember the 4 -- I went to the Presd (President) Brigham Young. He gave me counsell to give Brother Nisonger the oxen and wagon according to his request. I did so and we cleared off and am now clear of debt.

The 6 -- I went to work at the Public Works sawing but I could not work with my mate to Setefaction.

Friday the 7 -- This morning we desolved Partenership. My mate got me 35 pounds of flour. This just came in time for we were out Miles Romeny, the Bofs of the joiners, gave me work for this I was very thankful.

Setterday the 8 -- Miles Romeny got 10 $\frac{1}{2}$ pounds of Beaf for me. I have worked 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ Days. We have moved to the Sixteenth Ward and stoped in the wagon bed.

Sunday the 9 -- This Day I enjoied my self for the first time in the congrotation of the Saints in this City.

Monday the 10 -- This morning I have comenced to work for Heber C. Kimbell helping to make a portch round his House.

Thursday the 13 -- This Day I have recved 35 pounds of Flour and this neight attended a (word left out) at the Sochel Hall to encourag the raising of Fruit trees -- apples of differet kind, likewise Peaches, graps excetited (exhibited). I tasted the Veley fruits.

Setterday the 15 -- I have worked six Day at H C Kimballs House. We have got into a House again the first month free for me to repair the same. Three and half Dollars per month.

Tusday the 18 -- This Day I am sick but I keep at work. My wif and Children are sick but I sepose it the changing of diet.

Setterday the 22 -- This Day my Prayers is answered. I prayed that I might find favour in H. C. Kimball since I came into this place. I have felt ancous to recive my endowment. He, Brother H C Kimbl, called me into his house to entroduce me to one of his wife, an English woman. He told me that he had been thinking about me this two or three days to give me my endowments. I did not ask him but asked the Lord. I told him that was an answer to my prayer. I have worked Six Days.

Sunday the 23 -- G. A. Smith, the Historin, Preached a Historical Sermon, "The rise and fall of Nations". P P Pratt fowelled. This neight myself and wife and my Daughter, Dorothy, was re Baptised close by the Governors House in the 17 Ward and got Confirmed in the 16 Ward School Room.

Tuesday the 25 of September 1855 -- We received our Enduments. Got married for time and all Eternities or sealed by G. D. Grant at the alter.

The 26 -- At work H C Kimball was jesting a little. He told that I had a queere look. I have not been Shaved for two years. I was like a Jew. He told me to Shave my self. I went home and did so.

Friday the 28 -- I have bought a apron that was painted at Navou for two Dollars from Wm Cahoon.

Setterday the 29 -- I have worked 5 Days and have finesed at H C Kimblis. Wm Cahoon and Bulling was working at the same.

Sunday the 30 -- I have sent letter to my Brother John Knox, England. Payed one quarter Dollar for the same.

Monday, October the 1 -- Comenced to work at the Historing office to roof the same. Bread and water is our food cheefly. Bad for fire wood. (Guess he means there is no fire wood)

Tuesday the 2 -- I prayed to our Father in Heaven for fire wood. Br Wm Cahoon went to Bishop Wooly and got a load for me.

Thursday the 4 -- Brother Ebenaser Gillies stoped all neight at my house. (This must be his old friend from England)

Friday the 5 -- This week I have worked 5 Days.

Setterday the 6 -- Conference. I have attended the same.

Wedensday the 10 -- This neight I was called into Br Andrew Hoopers House. His wife was very sick of the Dree or Destenery. I laid hands upon her and she was heald.

Friday the 12 -- This Neight I have joined a Prayer Circel. Brother (he skips space) Fife is the President of the same. This is the first time.

Setterday the 13 -- I worked five days.

Monday the 15 -- I have joined a Meletary Company called the Ninet Company. I got a Musket, Baynet, Canry (?) Box, Bealt. We have Praided and agreed for this Company to get a uniform cot as this company is the first to be called upon. This coat is to be made of Buck Skin. Agreed to meet the last Setterday of every month.

Friday the 19 -- This Day I bruised one of my fingers. I have attended my Prayer Circull.

Setterday the 20 -- I have worked 1 1/2 Days. I have to quit work. My fingure is very sore. I went down to the third ward to try to get a loat.

Sunday the 21 -- The meeting was in the Tabernel. Br. Gibson spoke for the first time. Br. Brigham told the people to quite sending for the Doctors -- to send for the Elder and pray and lay hands upon them.

Wedensday the 24 -- This Day I was requested by Sister Mercy Thompson. She is the clark of the Femel relefe Society, to go in her absence. I went and had a good time.

Thursday the 25 -- I am still at work. Our alownce is redused from a pound of Flour per Day to half pound. I get my alowenc of Flour every week. I got 35 pound for five of us, but now it is reduced to 17 pounds per week. A pound per day. The Flour is very scarce this year. The Grafshopprs eat up all the Crops. John Barker and wife, who came last neight into this City by the T found Company and nothing to sestain themselves, came into my house this neight.

Friday the 26 -- I have attended my Prayer Circul in the Endument House.

Tusday the 30 -- This neight I went with Bro. Barker to wittnefs the Baptism of his wife and his entended wife. Returned home and confirmed them in my House.

Wedensday the 31 -- This Day Br. John Barker proposed me to Br. Robert Campbell to join the 8 Corm of the Seventys. About ten o'clock this neight Bishop Roundy of the sixteenth ward came for me to attend a sick Brother. I went and laid hands upon him. His wife was sick likewise. Had just come this seson. A house of dstrefs. I was alone. He Died at twelve o'clock. One O'clock I was with him alone. He has left a wife and six Children.

November the 1, 1855 -- This day I have attended a fast meeting and have asisted to drefs Brother Wright in his endwment Cloths and put him into his Coffen.

Friday the 2 of Nov. -- This day I have asisted to bury Brother Wright and attend my Prayer Circule.

Setterday the 3 -- This neight Br. John Barker and wifs left my house for Ogdon.

Setterday the 24 Nov. -- I agreed with Brother Graham for two loads of wood for my new reffel. I have received 17 pound of corn meal. This is the first.

Sunday the 25 of Nov. -- I attended Public worship.

Tusday the 27 of Nov., 1855 -- This morning about one o'clock I got up very sick. Took two doses of salt. I think the reson is we live so poor. The grafshopper have eating most of the Crops in this velly. We are only alowed half Pound of Bread stuff per day, a little meet and squash, some times a few Potates. I have hard to work but still I feel thankful for what I do git.

Wedensday the 28 -- I have got a good neight sleep and feel better.

Friday the 30 of Nov. -- This morning I have taken two doses of Castile soap.

December the 5, 1855 -- This neight I attended the teatcher's meeting in the 16 Ward according to Bishop Roundy's request and was set apart to act as Teacher in room of Brother Lawson.

Thursday the 6 -- This neight I visited the Block according to apointment as Teatcher.

Friday the 7 -- This neight I have attended my prayer sercule and had a good time.

Friday the 14 December -- I attended my prayer Circle meeting. I was mouth peace for the first time. I felt my weeknefs.

Setterday the 15 -- I got som lumber from Brother Meles Romney to make some seats to set upone.

The 13 of December -- I bought a 24 hour Clock from the Public. It cost twelve Dollars. The price of it in St. Louis is five dollars. This is a pretty hard time. Little fire, little food.
(I think this is the clock now in the possession of Sally Peart Eastman.)

Sunday the 23 of December, 1855 -- This neight I was ordained a Seventy under hand of President John Peck -- Wm Hide and four or five more, Wm Hide mouth piece. Great Blefsings was pronounced upon my head to go to the Nations and work mirecles.

Monday the 24 of Dec. -- Got two Dollar in cash for Christmefs.

Tusday the 25 of December -- Brother John Petery and wife was at my house shorte of fire wood. Very cold makes reather uncomfortable.

Tusday, Junery the first, 1856 -- Very cold. No fire wood.

Wedensday the 2 -- This is the day for us to get our lounce of Bread Stuff. A half pound per day this should have been.

The 3 of Junery - Thursday -- The mills is frosen. This reather pinchen times.

Setterday the 5 Junry -- I have got some corn meal and five pounds of Pork.

Thursday the 10 -- I have visited Brother Lawson. His wife having left him. I had them together and tryed to restore piece and union, but all in vain. I discharged my duty as a teatcher.

Friday the 11 Junery, 1856 -- I have put up the Rafters upon the 5 Ward School House.

Setterday the 12 -- Still at work at the same roof.

Sunday the 13 -- This morning Brother Wm Thompson let me have about 20 pounds of Flour from the tithing office. This was a great blefsing to my femely.

Thursday the 15 -- Brother Wm Thompson sent us a lode of fire wood from the Public. This was a great Blefsing to us. The wether very cold.

Friday the 25 -- Brother Wm Thompson let me have 63 pounds of Beaf sit down to my wages.

February the 2 -- Setterday. I attended a meeting in the Tabernicle to get up a daily mail run to the States.

Wedensday the 6 -- I have got one half bushell of Potates from Brother Wm Thompson. This is a great blefsing.

Thursday the 7 of Febuary 1856 -- This is the day that I should receive my alowence of Bread Stuff. I took the sack, but alefs, I had to return empty. All stoped. Square off. I have to go round the Block that I teatch to know how much provision is on hand. I am idle at present.

Friday the 8 of Junery, 1856 -- (He must have meant "February") I have asertained the amount of provisions that is in my destrect. If it were devided, it would not serve the people one month. Besides, we are one thousand miles from aney other Countery and, with that, Bound in by Snow. There is a very poor prospect before us as a people. The amounts that I have at present is seven pound of flour, 16 pound of Beaf, one Bushell of Potates. No work and don't know where the nixt will com from. Out of fire wood. Very cold.

Monday the 11 of Febuary, 1856 -- This morning I went to H.C. Kimbell to ask Councell about going to Carson Velley. He said that I was not to go. I told him that I had no work and I was told to branch out where ever I could git and Brother Forstgreen would take me and my femely. He, Brother H.C. Kimbell, said that he would put me through the Bad time but that I had to doe the best that I could to try to get Bread Stuff for he had so maney to seport. This releved me and I blefsed Brother H.C. Kimbell in my heart. The number of his femely at this time was seventy six.

These are hard times. We eat twice per day and not half setified. No fire wood. I attended the Jublee of the Seventys. Good teatchings were given.

Tusday the 12 of Febuayr (just how he wrote it), 1856 -- I again attended the Jublee. A great deal was said about the Saints in years that is past in destroying there grain, feeding out to Animls, selling it to the Gentills Marchents and not regarding the word of the Lord threw his servents to lay up against faming. Now the Lord has sent grafshopers and has destroyed the crops and then drouth and then a sever winter and destroyed the Cattle.

Continued upon the fourth Book. This is the third.

Wm Knox

WHAT YOU CAN EXPECT TO READ IN BOOK #4
OF THE WILLIAM KNOX DIARY

(About 2/3rds of Book #4 has to do with his trip from Sulfer Springs on the Merrimac River in Missouri in April of 1855, to his arrival in Salt Lake City on September 3, 1855 and then through February of 1856. Some of it is a repeat of the last few pages in Book #3. Book #4 was written in pencil because I imagine that ink was hard to handle as he traveled.)

We left Sulfer Spring on the 19 of April 1855.

April 20 - Got to Saint Louis. Sold his cooking stove and bought groceries.

April 21 at 12 o'clock -- Left St. Louis

April 23 -- Helped a 13 year old boy who was far from home.

(Traveled on across the State
of Missouri. It was expensive
to buy feed for his cattle.)

May 4-5 -- Cattle wandered off and were hard to find.

May 8 -- Passed two men on horses driving a negro woman. She was before the horses with her hands fastened together, being driven as if she were a cow.

(Passed through many towns.)

May 18 -- Got a letter from his brother, John Knox, saying his mother had died. (Amazing that he could get a letter when he is out in the middle of nowhere)

May 30 -- Organized into companies for crossing Plains.

June 2 -- Sold his watch so he could buy a rifle.

June 7 -- Expected to start across the Plains but had to go plowing at the poor farm. (They are now at Mormon Grove where the Saints were organized for crossing the Plains)

June 8 -- The wagon train started.

June 9 -- William's oxen got sick and vomited. He administered to the oxen. They found a note warning them not to camp on Chickapoo River.

(They have a usual amount of wagon trouble.
Also, they meet other companies of different
types)

June 18 -- Hot and windy. An alarm sounded that there was a band of Indians. It turned out to be a company of soldiers going to Ft. Kerney.

- June 21 --- Crossed the Big Sandy Creek.
- June 24 -- A message reached them from Erastus Snow warning them to be alert to attacks from Indians.
- June 25 -- Saw thousands of buffalo on other side of the "Little Blue". Captain Burges shot one. It was shared
- June 27 - A wolf came into the camp.
- July 1 -- Reached Ft. Kerney. William tries to borrow \$1.00 but is refused. He then makes a wagon yoke and sold it. He bought 3 lbs of salt, 1 lb. leather and a packet of tacks. He shoed his oxen.
- July 5 -- William's 40th birthday.
- July 10 -- Cattle stampeded. The mail passed by.
- June 19 -- At Ash Hollow. Buffalo chips make a good fire. Plenty of wild currants.
- July 23 -- Came in sight of Chimney Rock.
- July 28 -- Crossed river at Fort Laramie.
- July 30-31 -- A man got lost. Was found at the Trading Point.
- August 7 -- Crossed the Upper Platt River. "We are done with the Platt River".
- Aug. 10 -- Boy fell off wagon and was nearly killed. Gathered about 100 lbs. of Saleractus. (Another name for "soda")
- Aug. 13 -- William says, "We have crossed the Sweet Water four times.
- Aug. 15 -- Poured hot, boiling tar into the foot of his oxen. After 7 miles he had to leave the oxen. Bro. Burgas furnished another oxen.
- Aug. 16 -- Met some French Traders. Sold them flour for 16\$ a hundred. Br. Hill sold the flour and William didn't think he should have because there was a poor widow with 7 children who needed it.
- Teached the "Great Divide"
- Aug. 22 -- Reached Green River.
- Aug. 23 -- Detained because Sister Melton is in labor.
- Aug. 25 -- Reached Fort Bridger. A wagon from Salt Lake was waiting with flour for sale. An oxen was killed and sold for 12 cents per pound. There was a dance at the Fort.
- Aug. 28 -- Made it to Bear River.

Sept. 3, 1855 -- Arrived at Salt Lake City.

Tues the 4th -- Brigham Young counseled William to settle with Bro. Nisonger. He did, by giving Bro. Nisonger his team.

(Found some odd jobs)

Sept. 8 -- William's soul rejoices.

Sept. 22 -- Heber C. Kimball told Wm to bring his wife and get their endowments, which he did on Tuesday the 25th.

Sept 26 -- H.C. Kimball told him he looked like a Jew and that he should shave his beard. He did.

(William periodically gets flour from the Public. He talks a lot about the counsel given by the Brethern.)

Oct. 15 -- Joined a company called "Minute Men." This was a Parade Day for the Military.

Oct. 25 -- Has taken in John Barker and his wife who just arrived. (John Barker had baptized Elizabeth in Hylton)

Nov. 24 -- Traded his rifle for two loads of wood.

Nov. 27 -- William is ill. He thinks it is because all they get to eat is flour, a little meat, potatoes and squash.

(He is a Visiting Teacher. He attends a Prayer Circle and Priesthood meetings. He meets at the Tabernacle.)

January 1856 -- Very cold. Br. Wm Thompson sends a load of fire wood which is a great blessing

Feb. 2, 1856 -- Attended a meeting at Tabernacle and heard the Ballard Band of Brass Instruments.

(There is no food)

Feb. 14 -- Heber C. Kimball told William that he would not let his family starve . On the 20th Bro. Kimball gives him flour.

Feb. 28 -- Sister Kimball gave William $1\frac{1}{2}$ lb. of her own flour and about four pounds of fresh meat.

(William records a poem that John Barker has written. The last few pages of Book #4 are miscellaneous notes.)

Wm. Know

$$\begin{array}{r} 26 \\ 7 \frac{1}{2} \\ \hline 33 \frac{1}{2} \end{array}$$

8-2

5-1

Haysville

	0 80	for
	0 30	hows
	0 75	feed
	75	hay
	1 90	grain
50	0 25	hand basin
80	0 25	prints
12	2 50	oats
142	1 40	corn meal
	1 20	shorts
	0 30	oil
	0 15	salt
	0 30	Book
	0 10	Penicil
	32 05	

Milton D. Hammond

Elmigo J. Robinson

we left Sulphur Spring on
the 19 April - 1855

80 Cents for ferris, 50 cents
for towel 75 cents for feed
rain all day at night about 8 o'clock
we stopped at a farm upon the morning

75 Cents for hay April the 20 got to
Saint Louis sold my chickens worth
about twelve Dollars to E. Jones

payed 19 Dollars to the Green
25 for Butter 25 cents hand basin

250 for a pair of pants for hay
and oats 140 Cents 400 Corn Meal

120 for shorts 2 bushels 30 cents

15 cents for a pair of shoes 30 cents

10 cents for a pair of shoes 30 cents

E. Jones 15 cents for my

Daughter Mary Ann Knot paid
50 Cents for shoes soling 25
cents for ~~the~~ natural bridge
towel. I am in company with Bro
Strong and Brother Pierce three
teams we were two days two nights
for the ferry company Brother Snow told
us to go on I told Brother Snow that
I did not know how I would get
along not having money enough. He said
brother knot go and you will get it as
you go along the road but don't think
much don't hurry your cattle we left
St Louis on the 21 of April at 12 o'clock
25 cents for fuel and camped about
8 miles out got 100 pounds of Hay \$1.80
April the 22 Sunday morning we

offered prayers and enjoyed ourselves
all Day April the 23 This morning
we assembled our selves together
and asked our father in Heaven
to bless and prosper us and
started before we came to the river
Missouri A little boy came up
to my wagon he said that he had
lost his mother and that he was
a long way from home his age was
13 years he was trying to find employment
and he had no money he had stayed
at a Dutchman's all night he could
not find them therefore they sent him
away with breakfast I felt for the boy
and gave him ten cents and took him
across the river and that David here

WILLIAM KNOX DIARY - 4th BOOK

(Book #4 of the William Knox diaries was written in pencil on blue paper. The events in Book #4 are the same as in the last part of Book #3 with some variations.)

We left Sulfer Spring on the 19 April, 1855. 80 cents for ferring, 30 cents for towl, 75 cents for feed. Rain all day. At neight, about 8 o'clock, we stoped at a farm upon the road. 75 Cents for hay.

April the 20 -- Got to Saint Louis. Sold my Cooking (stove) worth about twelve Dollar to E. Snow. Payed 19 Dollars to the grocer, 25 for Butter, 25 Cents hand bason, 250 for a pare of pants, for hay and oats 140 Cents, \$400 Corn Meal, 120 for shorts 2 bushel, 30 cents oil, 15 cents sasage, this book 30 Cents, 10 Cents pencols.

Likewise, Brother E. Snow blefsed my daughter, Mary Ann Knox. Paid 60 Cents for ? soling, 25 Cents for naturel Bridge towel.

I am in Compney with Br. Nisonger and Brother Poerce, three teams. We were two days two late for the feris compney. Brother Snow told us to go on. I told Brother Snow that I did not know how I would get along, not having money enough. He said, "Brother Knox, go and you will get it as you go along the road, but don't stual (steal). Mind, don't hurry your Cattle."

We left St. Louis on the 21 of April at 12 o'clock -- 25 Cents for twl and camped about 8 miles out. Got 100 pounds of Hay \$180.

April the 22 -- Sunday morning. We offered prayers and enjoyed ourselves all Day.

April the 23 -- This morning, we assembled our selves to gether and asked our father in Haven to Blefs and prosper us, and started. Before we came to the river Mifsouree, a little boy came up to my wagon. He said that he had father nor mother and that he was a long way from Home. His age was 13 years. He was tring to find employment and he had no money. He had stoped at a Cutchman's all neight. He could not pay them. Therefore, they sent him away with brickfast. I felt for the boy and gave him ten Cents and took him acrofs the river and that saved him another ten cents.

I payed \$1 for ferrige and fifty cents for hay. This dollar was for crofsing. At St. Charles fifteen Cents for towl. Traveled about 18 miles and Camped. Pafsed thrug Cattelveel ten miles from St. Charles. 4 miles further we got hay \$1.00 per hundred. Plantersburg 6 miles. One of my oxen got a hurt on the off fore leg and I had to unyok him and let him follow after the wagon. I met a man coming on the road who traded a yoak of oxen with me. I gave him 2 dollar to bout. 6 bits for oats, 20 cents for eggs.

25th -- Passed through Warington. Distance from Planterville 25 miles.

26th -- Hay 6 bits, corn 1 dollar, Butter 15 cents.

27th -- Passed through Dansville at 7 $\frac{1}{2}$ o'clock, a distance

from Warington 24 miles. Passed through Williamsburgh. Distance from Danville 11 miles. Oats 40 cents, Milk 5 cts.

28th -- Oats 40 cts.

29th -- Sunday. We still remain in camp.

30th -- Monday. We renewed our journey. Camped 137 miles from St. Louis. Oats this evening cost 40 cts, being all the feed we could find for 14 head of cattle.

May the 1st --Renewed our journey. Oats this morning 50 cts. Pass through the town of Columba at 8 $\frac{1}{2}$ oc A.M. Distance from Williams burgh 26 miles. It rained pretty hard and we stoped about 3 miles out Cloumba. Payed 25 Cents for feed and 15 cents for pound of Butter. It cleared up about 12 o'clock and we resumed our nurney and came about 8 miles out of Columba and camped. Got 4 Dozen of Egges for 25 Cents.

May the 2 -- 60 Cents for Pastuarige. Two sick in our camp. We anointed and laid on hands and retired to rest.

May the 3 -- Paid for Pasturage 60 Cents. Pafsed through Fayette, Howard County, 25 miles from Columba. Pafsed through about 8 o'clock A.M. Pafsed Glasgo, 13 miles from Fayette and camped pretty late. 15 cents for Towel.

May the 4 -- 30 Cents for Pasturage, 75 Cents Ferry. If we had taken the Hitsvalle road we would saved this Ferrage and not pafsed through Glasgo. We did not know until two late. This is Charden County. About 9 o'clock this morning, while I was driving my teem through a wood about seven miles from Glasgo, a large Branch fell down and struck me upon the left shoulder. I fell down upon my knees. I did not know where it came from at first. This is a near escape for my life. If it had been my head, it must have kild me.

Bro. H. Nisonger and Br. J. Donnald laid hands on me and anointed me. My shoulder was peeled and hand a little peeled. We met with Bro. (can't read name) company -- 2 mules and a poweny to his wagon. We went about one quarter of a mile out on a rong road. If we had kept on the wright road, we would not have falling in with this Company.

Bro. E. Snow told me that we could come together. They started two Days befor us. By going out of our way, the saying of Bro. E. Snow was fulfilled. We camped for the neight.

I had, all the jurney, felt ancous to get the Brethren to be more deligent to the dutys that is devolving upon us to have ourslve orgnized in a proper manner -- to have a wach over our Cattle. This neight, I asked them if it would not be better to set a wach. I asked two or three times.

My shoulder was so sore from the blow that I received that made me more fit for my bead. I called them to order and we knelt down

and returned thanks to our Heavenly Father. After the same, we went to git the Cattle together but we were disappointed for they were off. All hands was out hunting for them. In about two hours, the Cattle was found. By this time, I was sore done off. The brethren did not seem to have much feeling of simpy for me in this state. I knew the reson. It was becaus they had not experenced much in the Kingdom of God. Still, I felt determind to preach up Brotherly Kindnefs and order that the blefsing of God might rest upon us and our Cattle. They told me that I might go to Bed and they would keep wach. I did so.

May the 5 -- This morning, when I awoke, the first thing, the Cattle all going but two, one of mine and one of Brother Pearces. There is a sort of grumblng and dessetfised Spirit in our camp. I was glad in a measure, that this had happen providing that we get the cattle again. I told the Brethern that this not happened unto us to teach us to be more delegend in servend the Lord. All hands was out hunting the Cattle, but could not find them.

We scattred ourselvs and returned to camp again. Now, the Brethern beleved that we had been delegend. We got off again into the woods. There was two with me. In the midst of the woods of the Mefsoree River, I told my Bro. it would be good for us to pray to our Heavenly Father that we might be directed to our Cattle. I prayed and we renewed our sarch, but in vain. Returned to camp again.

I told the brethern and sisters that it would be good for us to afsembel our selves together and kneal down upon the grafs and ask our Heavny Father to forgive us and restore our cattle to us.

We all knelt down upon the grafs and Iprayed. We mad another start of and went to the very place. One of the oxen hard us speaking. He belowed out, as much as to say, "We are here." We found them all and we rejoised. They had strayed off after water. When we got to camp again I told the Company that the Lord had restored our cattle to us and it was our duty to return thanks for the same. I proposed that the oldest man should do so. It fell upon Br. Perce and we resumed our journey again.

About one o'clock P.M., pafsed through Brunswick, Chardon County, 25 miles from Glasgo and camped at the edg of the town. I told the Brethern it would be good for us to have a Capten, or a Precedent over the wach and, likewise, a man to take the leed of spiritule things. This to be done by drawing cuts, or to make pieces of sticks, one for each man. Whosever got the long one was to be Capten of the wach. Bro. Andrew Horn got it. The same way again, our spiritual leadr, only the shortest revarse. The lote fell upon Jefse Young Blood. These both belong to the Company that we over-took. This took a great care of my head and I rejoiced in the same for there was something like a sistem of order now established amongst us.

The wach was set in operation. I had the first one hour.

May the 6 -- Sunday -- We camp all day. All things with a more pleasant prospect. At the close of this Day, I expected that we would have no more trouble about the watch, but in this thing, I was disaperted. A slothful spirit seemed to be in some of our Brethern contuned the watch. Besides, the Capton of the same did not understand his duty. It got dark and the Cattle all out of carlenefts (in book #3 he says the animals got out because of carlesnefts). We succed in geting them to gether again. I thought it my Duty, as a Elder of Iserel, to stand up in the medest of them and again teach the Doctrine of order and diligence. Likewise, the order of our Capen of the watch, and the watch was set for the neight.

May the 7 -- Monday morning. we started in good spirits and crofsed Grand River at crofses Ferry about two miles from town. One Dollar for the same. All things went well and camped out. Sung Hymns and prayed.

May the 8 -- We comenced our journey again after prayer, and pafsed through a town named Charlton, 22 miles from Brunswick. We are getting feed upon the Prarees for our cattle.

A few miles out of town, we pafsed two men upon Horses driving a Negro woman, her hands fasened together. She was just before the Horses Head just the same as she were a cow.

We camped at the first grove of timber, some way about 8 or 9 miles out of town upon a mill streem upon the right hand side of the road. Pafs this and there is no more water for twelve miles acrofs the Prarey.

May the 9 -- Renewed our Journey and came to Crooked River where we paid 40 Cent a teem to crofs it. One of the worst Bridges that ever I seed in my life. The name was Bufflow Bredge. I felt not like paying for I beleve that the man had no authority to charge. We camped for the neight about three miles on the east side of Richmond, Ray County.

I Preached a Brothers House where we camped. His name is Wm Dawson. I laid before the Saints the nefsity of keeping the words of wisdom. I persided over the meeting and called upon the Brethern. We had a good time. The Brother brought us Butter and milk.

May the 10 -- We renued our Journey and halted to accomadte the Mule teem for they were abut to traid for oxen. Did not traid.

Pafsed thru Richmond 30 miles from Charlton. This is the place where the Whitmorrs live that are the wittnefts to the Book of Mormon and maintain the same, but think that the Church has apostised. We pafsed thru. 9 miles Elkhorn from Richmond. We camped upon a place where there it was no feed. I paid 25 cents for oats.

May the 11 -- This morning I went through our camp and counseled with them to start without our brickfest and get to a place where we can feed our cattle, prehaps two or three miles ahead. It was agreed that I poured my cooking water out. Mad ready.

The time that I was watering my cattle, Br. Parce comenced to cock. When I returnd and seed what was up, I told them that it was our

salvation to get to the grafs for our cattle and not to be eating our selves and neglacting our cattle. I had some pritty sharp words. They told me that they would have there tea first.

Yesterday, they stoped at Richmond about one houre and half and we were stoped about one hour with the Mule teem. Now, we all knew that we had a long way to go before that we could get feed or water. We came to a good place about half mile ahead. We might as well been here two hours soner. We renewed our Journey and camped for the neight. Held a Councel meeting aboat starting in the morning. The first up, to call upon all hands to be all ready together.

May the 12 -- We started before the sun rise. Pafsed Haynsville 15 miles from Elkhorn and 25 miles from Richmond. The road is very hilly. We halted about three miles out of Haynsville to feed upon grafs, about 2 miles further plenty of water. We got dinner. Water is very scarce through this Country. We pafsed on untill we came to a creek and pasterage and good cocking water. Three miles befor we came to Plattburgh, we camped for the neight.

May the 13 -- Sabeth morning. We are camped for the day and partook of the Sacerment for the first time since we started. I taught the nefesity of keeping the word of wisdom. I preached to the saints to observe the orgnisations more strickely and again preached in the evingng.

May the 14 -- Again, renewed our journey and pafsed thru Plattsburgh, The County Seat of Clinton, 12 miles from Haynsville. Pafsed threw Rock house Prarery, 10 miles from Plattsburgh and camped at Plattrive, 11 miles from St. Joseph. Bad grafs. I preached to the saints the nefsesity of giting understanding.

May the 15 -- We renewed our journey. No feed for the cattle. We halted for dinner. Still no feed for the cattle. Every thing is burnd up for want of rain. We have lost the road. Went two much north and struck down the bottom and went dow to Lew's Ferry about 16 miles below St. Joseph and got hay, 45 cents and camped all neight. (In small writing, upside down on the top of the page, he has written, "We changed our road and pafsed through Rushville".)

May the 16 -- There is a little sicknefs in camp. One died yesterday and ___ died to day. Every thing seems present.

May the 18 -- This morning, I got 50 pound of corn meal \$1.50, one bag of shoarts 80 pound \$2.50, 12 pound of baccon at 8 cents \$1.00.

This Day I have got a letter from my brother, John Knox, from England, informing me of the deth of my mother, Dorothy Knox, who departed this life at half past ten o'clock fornoon, March the 5, 1855 and burried at Tweedmouth Church yard. She died of the desese was water.

May the 19 -- This day we have moved to Mormon Grove, about 4 miles from the River at Atcheson. One deth in camp.

May the 20 -- Sunday. This Day Milow Andrus Emigration delevered two very interesting Sermond upon the dutys of the Saints.

May the 21 -- This day, I have wrought all day at the Farm that is intended for the poor, making soad fenes.

May the 23 -- This day I have fines (finished) my part of soad fence which was five roads in length.

May the 24 -- Still in camp. I intended meeting this eving and we were adrfsed by Elder Milow Andrews on the duty of a camp life when he orgnesed the brethern at Mormon Grove into three militiray company, with a sergant to each compey, to enstruct them in Mile-taring exersis. The name of the V.2 (looks like N^o2) or litter B Company, Surgant John H. Connellon. This same day, Sister Jane Maclew agreed with me to go to the velley and gave me 39 dollars and 90 Cents for her pafsag. This is another blefsing confered upon us for we did not know how we were to get our provisions for the journey.

May the 27 -- Sunday. Still in camp. This day a great may was re-Baptised. We were adrefsed twice by Elder Milow Andrews and purtook of the sacerment.

May the 28 -- This morning, after role was called, Elder Andrews asked who would volentur to yoke up and go to the river and hal up the Saints with there wagons and lugage. The distance is about five miles. I halled up two load. It was late.

May the 29 -- Tewsday. This day, I went to Atcion and bought a Basket Botal to carry water on the planes. Paid one dollar and quarter for the same, and two drinking tins, five cents each. Brother E. Snow, one of the twelve Apostles came up to our camp. It was dark. He delevered a lecture, or gave some teachings to us as it was dark and rained fast. Still, he stood out in the same. My hart rejoiced to hear him and see him. The words of eternal life was imparted unto us.

May the 30 -- Wedensday. This morning, we were called to order and organized into companys. John Hindly is Capton of the fifty, Capton of ten John Singleton.

May the 31 -- This neight, I have attended to a sick Brother.

June the 1, 1855 -- This day, we have started out of camp, about one mile. I did not know what to doe for a gun. I had tried to borrow, but in vain. It was nefsary that I should have one to defend ourselves from the savage Indens.

This thought came into my mind ---- to go and git some more freight and the Lord would blefs me in so doing. I went streaght of and did what was segested to my mind and got twelve dollars worth of haling and bought a Riffel with the same \$12.

Prevous to this, Elder Milow Andrew asked if I wanted to take a chist to Salt Lake for him. "Yes", said I, and put it into my wagon.

It was one hundred and half. I had this chest a few days. Bro. Andrews told me that he would releve me from taking his Chest. He said that he was setfised he had proved my willingnefs and it was just the same as I had done it unto him.

June the 2 -- I comenced to make the nefsarv things that we would probly want if we should have a break-down with our wagons. I felt to sell my watch, if I could git aney thing for it. Bro. Andrews put it for auction and did his best to git as much as he could for it. He got $5\frac{1}{2}$ dollars.

June the 3 -- Sunday. This day, I was hinting up oxen and bought one pound, 50 cents, of gun powder, three pound of lead 30 cents, one box of caps 25 cents, a white hat $3\frac{1}{4}$ dollars. (The word "hat" isn't clear, but later he says that he put his hat on a horn of his oxen and prayed. $3\frac{1}{4}$ dollars seems like a lot of money for a hat.)

June the 4 -- Still making the things.

June the 5 -- This day I have finised. I have made a axeltree, one cuppling powell, one tong, two spokes, six stakes for pafsing the cattle to one yoke and a leaver to lift the wagons to grese them, and cut my leg with the edge. It is very sore.

We are all devided into tens. In the ten that I am in, I have had to doe all the work that has been done. The Capten helped me on Setterday but he had other bufsnes to attend to. It was the duty for every one to doe there share of this work, but they did not doe it. I felt to doe as much as I could to carry out President Snows enstructions. I cannot doe aney more for my legs is sore.

June the 7 -- This morning, we expected to start on our Journey for good, but we were disapointed in this. The order was this -- for to turn out our cattle and go to plowing on the Poor Farm. I sent two yoke to plow. I could not go my self on account of my leg. It rains fast and is very cold.

June the 8 -- This morning, about ten o'clock, the trane started - fifty one wagons. We had not going two miles until Br. Burges' wagon broke down -- an iron axeltree.

We traveled on until we came to Wallnut Creek, 36 miles from Fort Leavenworth and about 15 miles from Atchinson and about 12 miles from our camping ground. It was late.

About half of our company crofsed the creek and the remainder stoped. There was a little confusion amongst the cattle, not having got water. We got pretty well fixed up for the neight. Br. Greenwood had his oxen tied up, but unyoked. The result was one of them got strangled -- a fine ox. One of the teams run a littl aside. The result was two fell out of the wagon. Got bruised considerable.

June the 9 -- This morning is very plesent. Elder Milo Andrus called us together and gave us our farewell enstruction, that if we would not profain the name of Jehova, our God, and be united, neither the Indan, nor the Gentiles that have thretened our destruction, had power to harm us and we should go threw as well, or better, than aney company that ever crofsted the planes for the most had paid there tithing and he was not afraid of Br. Brigam Preaching the tithing to us. The was to not those that had not done there work at the soad fence (This last sentence does not make sense)

We renewed our Journey, but very slow teamsters, and ofen all most green. We halted at Little Grafs hopper Creek, 5 miles. One death at this place on our Journey.

I was herding my cattle. One of my oxen got sick and groned and puked. I laid my hands upon him and prayed over him. He comenced to eat again. Renewed our Journey and travled about seven miles and camped. At the camp ground, there was a large piluard stuck against the tree:

TAKE NOTIS, MAY the 22 - 1855. FRIENDLEY MORMENS, WE DO NOTIFY YOU TO NOT CAMP ON THE CHICKAPOO REVER FOR WE WILL NOT ALLOW IT AT ALL. PLEAS TAKE WARNING. I, THE CHEAF OF THE CHICKAPOO. George Eihery.

This was put up to try to scar us, but it had very little affect. We keep up a strict gard with gun or rifle. We are armed and ready for an aete (must mean "attack".) should the enemy come upon us. Even hearing our Cattle, we carry our gun. This neight pafsed of al right.

June the 10 -- We renued our journey again. We had scareley roled two or three miles on before three Indans watched us as we roled along, but they desapeared and we came to Big Grafshoped Creek. Made a read acrofs and all pafsed over to safty and camped for the neight and set the watch for half the neight and releved by fresh set. They call out every half hour. We have preaching generly every neight. My leg is still very sore yet, that I don't stand my watch, but I am always ready with my rifle charged.

June the 11 -- Sunday. We camped all day. Had meetings as usuly and had mileteury exersise. Our campen said that we did well and would soon be good solgers.

June the 12 -- I stood my watch this morning. We roled on. All well untill about 12 o'clock. I run against a Buggy wheel which upset the spoks. We mad a fire on and put the tier on again. About two hours another wagon axel expanded and got Iron bound but it was soon put to right and rolled on again and made 21 miles this day and camped at Big Muddy Creek. Good water. I road my watch from nine to twelve. We pafsed a goverment train. Some of the drivers had left.

June the 13 -- We renewed our Journey and camped at Nimmiha river or Creek, about fourteen miles from Big Muddy. Got dinner and again renewed our Journey. 20 empty wagens pafsed us returning to the Stats. We camped about 8 miles from Nammiha for the neight. Plenty water, but bad to git at it except with Buckets, and fire wood good, hickery for Bows or other purposes, but rather scarce. During the night it looked stormey.

The cattle began to be uneasy. All hands called upon and drove them into the Carrell and then the storm came on. It rained pretty (this sentence ends with the word "pretty")

June the 14 -- We were detained until dinner time. It cleared off and we proceed on our Journey and camped about 10 miles. Good water.

June the 15 -- We renewed our journey and passed twenty wagon returning from Fort Kernney. Shortly after, the Contractor of the United States male passed and gave the information that the male is two weeks behind time. It is supposed that they are cut off. We made about 16 miles and camped for the night.

June the 16 -- We renewed our journey and came to the Big Blue and all forded over safe nearly up to the axels. The Capten of our Company paid five dollars to a Pawnee Chife. It came to ten Cents a wagon, to cross the Salt Creek Bridge which the Indans say they have built. The cheaf name is Charly. I am out of money and cannot pay it. We camped. We mad about 12 miles.

It proposed and seconded that capten Hinnley should have horse. It was carried.

June the 17 -- We renewed our Journey and traveled on until we came to Cotton Wood Creek and there we watered our cattle and passed on again and we were passed by, or a Company of Elders from Great Salt Lake passed us. They were upon a Mesion. The Indans is not quit so bad as was reported for they had passed through with very little trouble. We have not had any trouble as yet. All things has going first rate according to the words of the Servents of the Lord. Br Copper's ox died this morning previous to our starting. Hooks in the eyes. We have come about 15 miles this day and camped soon in the afternoon on account to accomodate the Camp for washing the Cloths. This creek, I don't know the name of it, but it is on the rite hand side of the road. It still continues to blow. It has been blowing this three days.

June 18 -- Sabbeth. We are still in Camp, but it is very disagreeable, hot and windy and dust flying. I did not stand my watch last night. My leg was bad so the Capten of the watch did not require it this morning. I was resting my self.

An alarm was giving by some women. One came to me, in a great hurry, to get my gun for the indians was upon us. The capten was down at the creek. Messengers run for him. I got my reffle out, put my powder horn upon my shoulder, some Bullets into my pocket, caps and patches and got ready for a fight, if necessary, but lo and behold, it happened to be a Company of Soldger going to fort Kerney. There was a merchant train camped near to us. At the close of this day, it began to thunder most tremendous. The Creall was all Chained together by the wheels, so much Iron drew the lighting around us that it appeared that we were about to be all slane.

The terrible thunder rooled and rattled, the lighting flashed like a blase of fire all around our camp. Still, we were all preserved and our cattle.

June the 19 -- Monday morning we left _____ (He leaves this bland) creek. Three axels broak and one wheel. We had one tounge in our company broak. We camped at a creek one mile. We traveled about 18 miles farther than Rock Creek -- further ahead of Rock Creek.

June the 20 -- This morning Br. Singleton, the Capten of the ten that I am in, helped me to put a new tounge into Sister Joiner's wagon. We renewed our Journey and left the Marchants train behind and camped at _____ creek about 8 miles.

We renewed our journey again. The roads are very hilley and the sun very hot. There is a great deal of grumblin in camp. The reason is the teams so far scattered and driving too fast. We were late git to camping ground where we came to the Big Sandy Creek cut of road. The half of the company were crofs with Captan Hendlay at there head. It was dark. There was no nefsety for this, for we pafsed plenty of good camping places, so one half was on one side of the Creek and half upon the other.

One of the Capten don't seem to studdy the well fare of our Cattle. The is not a good spirit in camp. We have been Blefsed thus far upon our Journey. We travled about 18 miles.

June the 21 -- This morning, the Capten came acrofs the creek about three o'clock this morning and woke all hands up. I told him about the devision and that it looked like that, if better care was not take, many of the Cattle would be break down. I did not like the manner of his speech, but I did not care much.

We all got safe acrofs the Big Sandy Creek. Before we came to this Creek, we pafsed over a pretty high Bluff. Down below look flat with Semenly a water run, some trees on the left hand side or small wood. We left the old road about one mile before that we came two the Big Sandy Creek. This after none, a mule teeam pafsed and gave a letter to our Capten from E. Snow, one of the twelve Apostles. At the same time, we seed for the first time, an Antelope crofsed the road. We got to the Little Blue just in time for a tremendous storm cam on just as we got to the camping ground. We have not been trubled, as yet, by the indens. This is the Pacomee nation.

June the 22 -- We are in camp this morning. A wagon stoped. Two men. They were robed of all there provisions by Rapows and Shions Indens. While writing, I was called upon to afsest to lay out Brother George Waters that died this morning. This evining Br. Avery Child was very sick. His name is Milow. He was healed by the laying on of hands. I stood my watch from four o'clock in the after noon until half past twelve at Neight. I was Sergeant of the guard.

June the 22 -- This morning, Jane Maclaw, my pafsanger, left us. She did not feel comfortable. She said she could not doe with my wife. The reason is my wife would not hear her speak against the authoritys of this company and she forbad her to bringing aney more stories.

I agreed to let her go and give her porton of Provisions and carry one hundred pound weight for her. We held a good meeting. The Capten read a letter from E. Snow, or an Apistle, to stope us until the rest of the Companys come up. We again renewed our nourney. We had been about one mile from the old road. It rained very hard. The roads very sandy. We came about five miles and camped.

I got Capten John Singleton and Capten MacMullen and they disided the quantety of Provisions that I had to give to Jane Maclaw. It was in a pretty good Spirit.

June the 24 -- This is a fine morning. Good meeting. We renewed our journey and made about eleven miles and camped. I got what I wanted of Capten Hendly, the Capten of our hole company. The letter that was sent by exprefs by Erastus Snow, this just came in right time.

Independence, Mo.
June 12th, 1855

To the Several Captens of the Emegrating Companys of the Saints and all Camps of Isreal.

Greeting Beloved Brethern,

In consequence of reasant reports of Indens depeations upon the mail party and arely trains, some of which are saed to be left upon the Plains without aney animel, I have concluded to reduce to writing some of the leading itims of instructions which I gave you when you were orgnized.

First. See that all are well suplied with arms and amunetion and let the Sergent of the guards see that they are kept in good repair and ready for instent use and the men well trained in the use of them.

2. Doe not permit your Company to devide or scatter while journing, or alow aney person or persons to walk either before or behind your trains out of sight or beyond the reach of your guns

3. Always selict open ground for your stoping places, away from Brush, Hills, Revins and so forth, that might aford shelter for an enemy to creep up upon you and, no case, allow your stock to be turned out to graze either morning, noon or neight, without a strong male guard around them and, at neight when they are well-filled, let all be tied either inside or outside your Curll and guards placed around them.

4. My advice for Capten Henley, with the first Company, to stop in the neighbourhood of fort Kearney until the four companys now orgnized, all come into clofs proxcemity, and thereforth, Journey and Camp in sight of each other. So long as you are on the Platt and Sweet Water, if practecable, if not allways, in sight of each other, at least near enough to afford mutual protection.
5. When the Indens keep off the road and entirely out sight, then be doubly watchful if aney appear and approuch your camps in a friendly manner. Treat them kindly, but don't sell them Arms and Amunition and let not appearent Frindship throw you of your guard and expose yourselves to treachery, but, at such times, increes your guards at your outposts and a good desplay of your strength, your Arms and your readynefs to protect yourselves.
6. Sanctify the Lord God of Israel in your hearts and Journey in his name and in his strength, remembring aways your prayers in the sison there of in your tents and your wagons, and assemble often to instruct and exhort each other, and the Captens of each Company and his Capten of tens, will Preside over all the intrests of the Saints under there care, both Spiritule and timporal.
7. If a spiret of rebellion and dissatisfaction or carelefsnefs in duty, unfaithfulnefs in guarding and so forth, manifest its self in camp, then will the Lord not go with you and you would doe well to remain in camp untill repentence and reformation restore again his favours and Blefsings upon you.
8. The better to enable you to (carry) out these instructions, and for the well fare of the advanced companys, Elder Richard Ballantyne, Capten of the 4 Company is hareby appointed President over the four first Companys and aney order or instructions whitch he may feel moved upon to send forward to aney of these companys will be received as from me.

In conclusion, dear Brethren, let me exort you not to esteem lightly the counsell of the Holy Spirit and become unmindfull of these and, in as much as you are faithfull in fulfilling your Covenant and observing these things, I leve my Blefsing upon you that you may all have a safe and prosprous Journey and rejoice evermore in the goodnefs of our God.

I remain trully and faithfully your Brother in Christ.

Erastus Snow

PS Will Elder Ballantyne cause this to be copied and forwarded to each capten. ES

Our company was nearly devided. The Spirit of contention was ganing ground. This Epistle from Br. Erastus Snow, one of the Twelve Apostles of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints just came in right time.

June the 24 -- Sabbath. We are in Camp all Day. The Day is pafsed very plesent. I was harding Cattle from 2 in the morning to ten the fornoon. Good meetings.

A large train pafsed us on the evining. During the meeting an Indian was seen upon a Bluff watching our movements. They keep away from us to try com upon us unawars. This shoes that they are determand to fall upon us if they can git a favourable oppertuny. We keep a good guard with our Riffels or guns loded with Ball and even Harding our Cattle every man has his Riffel or gun, with him. The Indens sees this, but we don't see them oft. If they were peasable towards us, we would have them every day amongst us.

June the 25 -- This morning, we again resumed our Journey and came about ten miles. Thousands of Bufflow were Hearding upon the other side of the little Blue. Capten Peter Burges shout one abut four miles of our Camp. I went to afsest to Bucher him and bring him into the Camp. He was a Bull, about six years old. This is first Bufflow that I ever seed in my life. The Bufflow was feeding about theree Hundered yards from the one that we were cutting up.

It was nearly dark before that we got into camp. A mule teem brought him into camp. The Dears and Elks, wolves, Antlops were playing about. Present sight, indeed, to see natires animels feeding and playing upon natures field or upon the Prayers (prairies).

Capten John Singleton lost his Horse. There was five appointed to go to the Bufflow that order might be perserved. Order was observed. There was only about three that did not observe order. The rest of the Camp behaved exceednly well. Two Companys of marchants trains pafsed us last neight.

June the 26 -- This morning the Bufflows was shared out and went off first rate. We had some for brickfast. It eat very pleasent. Capten John Singleton found his horse.

A company of saints pafsed us this morning bound for the States. Some of them had backed out. Our Capten has sent a letter to Capten Balleneyne to plead with him to let us rool on for the Provisions is gitting eat up fast.

The Bufflows are still feeding along the Little Blue. We travled about 8 or 10 miles and camped. The capten sent out about six men to shut Bufflow. They killed four. It was late before they were got into camp. They got three. One was lost, it being so late. I stood my watch from half past twelve o'clock until day light. I found one of the men asleep. I took his gun and wok him.

June the 27 -- The Date that Joseph and Hiram was shoat.

While I was on guard, my attention was taken by a wolf. He came close to me. He wanted to be into the Creall to get some Bufflow. The meat was sared out and all hands engaged to presurvd it. We cut it into thin slices for dring. Mad a little salt pickl or Brine. Dipped the meat into it, put a little black Pepper upon the same and laid it out to dry.

At ten o'clock, I was sent on to Harding the Cattle and stoped until four P.M. At our meeting, the Capten repermanded some of the Brethern for the neglect of duty, going to sleep while on duty. Some have had there Hats taken from them, some there gun and some there knife, to make an example or shame them to there duty. Br. Thomas Williams Jur. was called up before the meeting and his nife Publice presented to him as a token of his slothfulnefs.

Likewise, all animels that is found will be taken care of and delevered up to the pound in Great Salt Lake.

We camped hear all Day for to Preserve the Beaf, not being in a hurey until we get orders from the Companys that is behind.

The Little Blue road is 50 miles long, according to information that I can get. From Little Blue to the Plate river is 40 miles.

June the 28 -- Thursday. We drove a short distance and camped again along side of the little Blue where the Bufflows are feeding.

June the 29 -- This morning I was on heard. It rained. I got wet. We left this place, the little Blue, at about four o'clock this after noon. The distance between the Big Blue and the little Blue is, according to the best emformation that I can get is (He leaves a blank) We resumed our Journey and travled about 8 miles and halted for supper and to water the Cattle. This is the only water, and very bad at that, for about 30 miles. The Cattle would not drink it.

We renewed our journey again and travled all neight until about between five and six o'clock this morning. We travled 40 before that we camped at the Plate river. (40 miles is a little much to have traveled in one night, but the number #40 is clearly written)

June the 30 - Setterday morning. Fine wether. All very sleepy and tired. We stoped here all day, but it was a Bad place to Camp, two low and not convenient for Fire wood. At evening, Capten Hinley had reason to speak very sharp and declared that the Camp should be stoped until the spirit and union was restored that out to be amongst us and the Camp, as a whole, was not in a fit state to pertake the Sacrement, but yet, there was some that was pure.

July the 1 -- Sabbath morning. At prayer meeting, Capten Henley said that the Lord would not be angry with us if we leave this Camping ground, it being too low. We yoked up and came to fort Kerrney and camped about a mile beyond the Fort. It is 50 miles from the little Blue. Many of the Indens visit us. Some of them Fanced some of our Sisters and said that they would give five Pownus for a Squaw. There are very devel. One of them pleted my Beard and tied the end with a pece of lether.

July the 2 -- This morning, I went to Br. Josiah Pearce and asked him for the lone of one dollar. He refused. He said that he could not spare it. I was to git salt and suggar. I did not know to rais this money. Just at this time, Capten Henely asked me if I could Bush a Wheel. I bushed the wheel and got one dollar for the same. I, likewise, made a yoke and sold it, one dollar and quarter. I got three pound of Salt at ten Cents per pound, one pound of Lether and one packet of tacks. This to shoe the oxen if there feet ware out. The lether was 40 Cents per pound, 20 Cents for the tacks.

July the 3 -- At half past twelve o'clock, I went on guard and contuned until dalight, about four o'clock, and at that time the Cattle is untied and heardsman called out. I was called upon duty again. I thought that this was not wright. I told Capten Wright that it was not my turn. He told me not to dictate, quite in a sharp tone. I told him that I was not dictating him. He said, "shut-up" two or three times. A few words pafsed between us.

We comenced our Journey again and travled about 15 miles and camped along side of the river. Plenty of Bufflow. We brought one into the Camp, cut up.

This day, I have been upon my legs twenty one hours. I think that the Capten of the Guard, Br. Wright, does not care, or has very little Judgment or feeling for his brethern. He sleeps all neight, stands no guard, but calls the guard out. I doe not feel good toward him.

July the 4 -- In camp, I afsisted to get wood to make Charcoal. There is some Blacksmith work to be done. We are going to stope here untill farther orders.

This after noon, the Indens begain to come in sight. We were ordered to put the caps upon our Riffels and be ready. All the Bufflow meet that was cut up to dry, was all ordered into our wagons to be out of sight. There riding around the Crell sping about. They all went of in peice. I gave a quilt in exchaing for a Bufflow skin, or robe.

July the 5 -- This Day I am Forty Years of Age and still camping upon the Planes.

July the 6 -- I have been Herding the Cattle. Ten men of us marched Rank, send (single) File out of the Creall, or camp. We returned in the same order.

July the 7 -- This morning, I was called upon to Pray at the meeting. I did so and felt first rate. I have mad a yoke.

July the 9 -- Brother Blare Company pafsed our Camp. They had 36 died of the Cholera. They are from Texes. He has going through with the mail.

July the 10 -- The mail pafsed our Camp. This Day our Cattle Stampead or run from us, but they were soon stoped by the Horses and renewed our Journey. Again, one of my oxen foot is sore and traileed a few miles along the Plate rever and camped for the neight.

July the 11 -- We rened our Journey and pafsed two trains at Plumb Creek, 26 miles from Fort Kernney and camped. My ox, Charley, is very lame. I washed him with soap and banged his foot with tar.

July the 12 -- This morning a vote was called for to see whether we, the Camp, was willing for us to proceed upon our Journey or to stope in obedence to the Epistle that was sent by E.Snow -- to stope untill all the Company arived about Fort Kernney, on account of the Hostility of the Read men. The report that was sent to E. Snow was partly fals, that the Officers of this Camp considered that it would be wisdom to proseed upon our Journey for they had sent some three letters stating things as they appear to excist.

The last mail that pafsed us, we expected news for us to proceed, but we were disapointed. We have stoped between two and three weeks for the other companys to come up according to the Epistle that was sent after us. The third Company pafsed us and no news. They had suffered much with the Chollara. There Capten told that they had got permision to go on.

The Company agreed to pafs on, or voted for it, except one man. He was on the contray. His reason was asked. He said that it was not for the sake of contradison, but simply the Councile that was sent to us through the Epistle.

Still, as burdend as ever, our Capten said that the provisons would run out if we stoped aney longer. We pafsed Cotten Wood Sprinds, 40 miles from Plune Creek and pafsed the third train.

July the 14 -- We camped at a good. Plenty of good feed.

July the 15 -- Sunday. This morning our Capten thought it wisdom to travell about ten miles and Camp for the Day, but this was not according to my mind for the Councell was to ceas

to travel on the Sabbath Day unless a real case of necessity. We started and came to the Camping ground but the Day was badly spent for the Brethren commenced to shut Bufflow. It was not like a Sabbath Day.

July the 16 -- Monday morning. At meeting, our Capten said that we could not proceed on our Journey until the Brethren had repented. A good deal was said and we started of again. One of my oxen has got a sore neck. The yoke is rather narrow. I have made one two inches broader, 8 inches across the working place and I bath the neck with salt and water every night. It is improving and doctor my other ox's foot with grease and gun powder.

June the 19 -- Camped within three miles of the place where we cross the River. We have crossed the River Plate about twelve o'clock P.M. and got, or traveled, to Ash Hollow where we camped about seven o'clock, nearly dark. The distance that we had traveled is about nineteen miles.

Just going down into the Hollow is a very steep Bank to ascend, very dangerous.

We have been used chiefly for fuel Bufflow Chips, that is the Dung dried. It makes a good fire. I was foremost ox team that lead the way. Our Capten said that we had made this distance quicker than ever had been made before. Plenty of wild Currents. The Indians Bury there dead in Berrys and grapes, Cherries, Bufflow Berries. This is a rough looking place.

July the 20 -- I have just got a armful of Branches laden with black Currents Berries. We resumed our Journey. The road along side of the river is very heavy and bad, nothing but sand for ten miles. We've traveled about fifteen miles and camped. Plenty of feed and water, but no wood for Fire.

July the 21 -- We resumed our Journey. The road very bad. Sand. Traveled about fifteen. Camped just before a thunder storm came on.

July 22 -- Sabbath morning. Brother Burges gave us some Beans and read hearing. I have done work for him. This Day was spent pretty good. (On the top of this page, in very small writing it says, "various ways sometimes upon a tree." I don't know what he could mean.)

July the 23 -- We renewed our Journey. The roads still Bad and Sandy. We had scarce traveled one Hour until five Horses made up to our Company. Had made there escape from, we suppose, the second Company of Saints that is still behind, but, how far, we don't know. We traveled, I suppose, about eighteen miles. We came in sight of the Chimney Rock. This is a rock that stands perpendicular, resembling a long Chimney. Camped for the night.

July the 24 -- We renewed our Journey and pafsed a large Rock, or the Devel Court House, and Camped within two miles of the Chimney Rock. I sepose that we had travled twenty five miles. I sepose that it will be about fifteen miles between the Devels Court House and the Chimeny.

July the 25 -- This morning, just as we was rolling out, the owners of the Horses that was pecked up on the 23, yesterday, took them away. We camped for dinner and found another Horse, but we had not got far upon our Journey untill this Horse was owned by one of the traders.

We pafsed through the Scotch Bluffs. It is a very dangres place. The rods so winding and up-and-down Banks, but a short, about half, mile. We all got safe through and Camped down below. Plenty of grafs.

Just here, there is a trading place, deserted for fear of the Indens.

We got plenty of fire wood. It begins here the roads is a little better, sometimes hard and sometimes sandy.

July the 26 -- All going right.

July the 28 -- We crofsted the rever again at Fort Learmey and about four miles past the same. Camped. The feed is very bad.

July 29 -- Sabbath. A good porton of camp work done. The American fur Company.

July the 30 We again renewed our Journey. Very heavy Sandy roads. We came to a trading House and stoped about two Hours. The Cattle had not got much feed during Setterday neight and Sunday. I thought it foolish to spend so much time just to pleas a few that had money. This place is about 9 miles from the Fort.

We renewed our Journey and, about three miles ahead, the road strikes to the right hand, leaving the strate road. This is the new road, I sepose, that freemont surveed. Here we made a mistake and took the old road that lead to the Black Hills and went about two miles and returned again. Our Capten was behind during all this.

A man got astray, or lost. He went on and mifsed the train. We Camped three miles Cold Water Spring, from the place where we left the old road. I helped to get fire wood and mad a large fire upon a pretty high mountain that he might, prehabs, make to the fire.

This spring is on the left hand side of the road about a quarter of mile from the road. Rount a hill there is Bunches of willies about it.

July the 31 -- One man from every ten went on horseback to try to find the lost man. They found him at the tradend point. About 7 or 8 miles from Fort Learmy there is a very steep Bank. We renewed our Journey. We travled about fifteen miles and Camped at a place where there is good water, about two miles from the rever on the left hand side of the road. We got feed down at the rever. It has been rather Hilley.

August the 1 -- We renewed journey and pretty good road and Camped at Horse Shoe Creak.

August the 2 -- We renewed our Journey and overtook a France Company at Horse Shoe Creek. There he was wating for us. The Indens was lirkng about. Our Capten put a front and rear guard, rank and file and all to be ready. We Crossed the Plate rever with our riffles. I Drove my oxen with my Riffel upon my shoulder. We Camped upon the Plate rever. We took a new road Labonte, and traveled about 13 miles.

August 4 -- We travled about 15 miles and got to Deer Creek. The old road that we would have taken had it not been for the French traider was the middle one. We took Southeast road.

The 5 -- Sabbeth. We are Camping all Day at Deer Creek. The Indens are watching us upon every side. We carry our riffels with us if we leve the Camp one Hunderd Yards or over. The Capten wanted 4 men to get ahead & 4 behind upon Horses with there Riffles.

Our Capten got a letter from the Capten of all the Company that is behind. About seven men went down to the rever to catch some Fish. Three of us stood guard over them with our loaded guns. Caught 22.

There is plenty of good Mint. I got some this morning and dried it to use it for Tea. Three of these small fish came to my share.

The 6 -- Monday morning. We left Deer Creek and left one ox behind belonging to Br. Rily. I wont mention the names of the Creeks that we pafsed over for I have a guid that answers this part of the road. We travled about 27 miles this Day. There is no feed for the Cattle. We drove one hour in the Dark. Our Capten this neight told this Compy to lighten our wagons as much as pofsable. We camped about 2 miles ahead of the Fort where there is a Bridge acrofs the Rever.

The 7 -- Tusday. This Day we have travld 15 miles and Camped at the first mineral Spring. This is a good place, plenty of grafs. We crofsed the rever at upper Platte, Ferry and ford. We are done with the Plate Rever. This is considered a poisonous Place. The water is a Mineral Spring and lake. There is a French mountennear that have travled these planes for 22 years. He lets his Cattle drink of this sparenly and uses the same him self. We have done the same.

The 8 -- Weddensday. This morning we roled out, the Cattle well filled. Got dinner 13 $\frac{1}{4}$ miles at small streem of clear spring good water and pased the willow Spring. Good water and pretty good grafs here. There was maney useful pieces of Iron ling strayed about, iron axels.

This spring is just at the rise of a long, high bank called Prospect Hill. We have seen many rattle snakes on the wagons, and sage chickens. We camped at a rung water the South side of the road.

It was nearly dark when we Camped. Plenty of grafs but the place very mirife --- two oxen had to be puled out by the neck. A great deal of grumblng in camp, not starting in time in the morning and driving so long, or late, at neight. We traveled about twenty miles.

The 9 -- Thursday. We rolled on and came to a streem on the left side of the road. The road is very heavy, sandy. The old road is strate on but took the new one on the left along side of this running water. Here a wagon upset into this creek. We all stoped all day on account of it. The road is close to the edge of this Creek. Good grafs.

The 10 -- Friday. We had not going many miles before a very sever acedent happened. A Boy fell out of the wagon, nearly Kind (must mean "killed"). The wheels went (over him). Broke his arm, cut his head.

We came to the Saleractus. On the South side of the road, I gathered about 100 pounds. (saleratus is another name for baking soda)

On the north side, there is a larger lake. I got some out of it. Here is a trading place close to this lake. The road crofses the Sweet Water at this place. We went acrofs the Bridge and Camped at Independence Rock. It is very cold. Lion, one of my oxen, came from the herd with a sore foot.

The 11 -- Setterday. We camped alittle ahead another AlKale. My ox is very lame. We camped 31 $\frac{1}{4}$ miles from the velley. I got my ox thron down and drefsed his foot with lard and gun Powder. I have got two oxen lame out of the four.

The 12 -- Sunday. This morning, we renewed our journey sore against my mind on account of it being Sunday. I wanted the oxen to rest but I had to submit. We travled about miles and Camped for the Day. (He failed to write the number of miles)

The 13 -- Monday. My ox left and travled about 15 miles. A very dangerous place for Poision the Cattle. I put a wagon Toung into a (word left out) on of Br. Bergufs. My ox is very lame. There is plenty of feed. We have Crofsed the Small river four times, Sweet Water. We camped about a mile from the 4 crofsing.

The 14 -- Tuesday. We renewed our journey and Crofssed this small river the 5 time. We travled about 22 miles. My ox is very lam. I feel sorry for him. This Day is a very heavy Day, Sandy Roads. The oxen is giving out. My ox fell down in the wagon. Br. Barens took his ox out and gave -- (He didn't finish the sentence)

The 15 -- Wednesday. This morning I got my ox hove down and tried to cut open his foot by working a small roap back and forward within his claws until the Blood came and then pourer into his foot boiling Tar. One ox died this morning belonging Br. Aston. There is no feed at this Creek.

We started very soon this morning. I got a Boy to drive my teem and I drove Lion, that is the name of my ox that is lame. We got to the place where the Road joins the River that is $267\frac{1}{2}$ miles from the velly.

I had a teadous jobe and a sorryfull one at this place. There was plenty of feed. We got at this place about 9 o'clock A.M. and stoped about two hours. I did feel like stoping at this place onoccount of the feed and then pour ox. I started after the wagons with my poor ox, some times upon his feet and some times down. I got him about 7 miles past this place and had to leave him where the road wind round at Sufsion of Hills for three miles. I got him about a miles from the river. Br. Burgas furnished me with one. I feel thankful for the same.

When we left this last place where there was feed and plenty water, we could not get aney more, espesely water, untill we came to the Branch of Sweet water. $248\frac{1}{2}$ miles from the velly. Very little feed. It was late and dark before all got into Camp.

The 16 -- Thursday. We started and got to Sweet Water, 3 rods wide, 3 feet deep, $241\frac{1}{4}$ from the velly. We got here between 12 and one o'clock P.M. Five miles we have come to Day. The feed is poor this afternoon. The oxen that wants showing (shoeing) is getting showed. There is some French Traders here, two wagon and two tents. Br. Hill sold some flowr at the rate of 16 Dollars per Hundred. This is not rite to sell flour out of this Camp while there is poor widow with seven Children out of the same.

Altitude 7,085 feet. This is the dividing ridge between the waters of the Atlants and Pacific.

The 17 -- Friday. We have come to Pacific Creek and Springs, $12\frac{3}{4}$ from Sweet Water, $228\frac{1}{2}$ from the Velly. There is five Companys of Called tens. The two leaders, Capten McMullen Company and Capten Loge Company. Stoped at the Spring head where there was an abundance of grafs.

I was in the three Companys that went farther down about half mile and there we Creeled. This looks like a devsion.

Capten Hendly is with this Company. About two Hours afterwards, these two Companys Hitched up and Crealled with us. Br. Nisonger's ox died. There is a bad feelin and look devision when the Heads are at verence.

The 18 -- Setterday. This morning another ox died belonging to Br. Hill. This morning the devision is still kept up. We traveled about five miles and Camped alltogether. Br. John Singleton's Horse Died and one Child Died that was born the first Crofsing of the Plate Rever. The wether is fine. Cool at night.

We have nearly three miles to bring our drinking water. There has been maney oxen showed. This afternoon, I could not git mine done. I had no nails. Br. Burgefs could not let me have his ox. I got two Cows belonging to Br. Browns. I put them on the tounge and let him have my strong ox in there place.

The 19 -- Sunday. At a meeting in the fornoon, Capton Hendly read Elder Snow's Epistle to stop the camp untill all things was put right. It was put to a vote and carried not to break up but to keep united. About one o'clock P.M., we roled on, but only travled about four miles. It rained fast.

The 20 -- Monday. We renewed our journey. Two wagons was detained. There oxen could not be found, and severel more. Capten Hendly stoped and healped to sarch for them. The second Company stoped them at the Pacifice Springs. They all got safe home at a late Hour. We Camped at Big Sandy the first. Not much feed.

The 21 -- Tusday. I sent a few lines to Br. D. Sumpson by Br. Coward. They, Bro. Cleman's mule teem, are going to the velly. They extend to be there in eight Days from this. Br. Avery left his light wagon this morning. We have Camped at Big Sandy No. 2 and found the mule teem at this place but they started on again.

The 22 -- Wedensday. We renewed our journey. We got to Green Rever at about noon and got dinner. We travled about 18 miles and still at Green Rever and Camped. We came, or went, up to the first trading, or higest one and travled down untill we came to another Traiding Place and we took the road that lead of to the North or right hand. It is said that we came a long way out of the way.

The 23 -- Thursday. This morning we are detained. Sister Melton is in labour. At half past nine this morning the Femeal Child was Born at Fort Liberty. We renewed our journey again. We started about three o'clock this afternoon and mad Hams Fork. It was about eleven o'clock.

The 24 -- Friday. We renewed our Journey.

The 25 -- Setterday. We got to Fort Bridger about 2 o'clock PM. Here there was two wagons from the Velly with Flour for sail. A ox was killed for this company at 8 and 12 Cents per pound. At neight there was a Dance at the Fort.

The 26 -- Sunday. Still in Camp. I bought eight pound of the Beef at eight Cents per pound. We have enjoyed the same.

The 27 -- Monday. We rolled on after dinner and made Muddy Creek and hear we meet five wagons with flour. We camped for the neight. It was about ten o'clock P.M. All right.

The 28 -- Tusday. We renewed our journey and mad Bear River just after dark here. Across there is 5 wagons laden with Flour.

The 29 -- Wedensday. We Bought 25 cents Potatoes from the Brethern that is on there way to meet the Emgration.

The 30 -- Thursday. We Camped Cache Cave. We renewed our Journey. Br. Burgefs broke tong and Hounds, Br. Riley wheel and axeltree. Br. Perry broak Wheel, all the Spokes. We left them behind with sefficent help to repair there wagons. We three Company came to Red Fork of Heber River, 44 $\frac{1}{2}$ miles from the Velly.

The 31 -- Friday. We renewed our Jurney and Camped 40 miles from the Velly. Here we met Br. Blare and Br. David Camdling. About 2 hours after, Br. E. Snow came into Camp without a hat. Br. Bafsit with him. They entend to be into the City tomorrow morning. There is a Brother from the Velly.

Setterday, September the 1 -- 1855 -- We renewed our Journey and Camped four miles from the Big mounting.

Sunday the 2 -- We renewed our journey and Camped about 11 miles from the town or city.

Monday the 3 -- We got into the City. We went with Br. Silcock into the sixth Ward. Put my oxen into a Bro. loat to be paid for with salurale (I imagine this word should be "saleractus")

Tusday the 4 -- I went to President Brigam for Councels in regard to my teem. He said it would be better to give them to Bro. Nisonger. I did and I am free again.

Wedensday the 5 -- I went to work at Sawing on the Public works but I could not work with my mate to setefection.

Friday the 7 -- This morning we desolved Partners or we could not Saw together. I am working about the place. My mate got me 35 pounds of flour for me. Miles Romeny, the Bofs of the Carpentrs, gave me work for which I was very thankful.

Setterday the 8 -- This Day I enjoyed my self for the first time in this City to Congrate with the Saints of God and did hear the words of life and salvation from the Fountin head. It caused my Soul to rejoyce.

Monday the 10 -- This morning I am, or have comenced, to work at Br. H.C. Kimball House helping to make a portch round his House. We are still living in the wagon Bed.

Thursday the 13 -- This day I have received 35 pounds of Flour from the City works. This night I have attended a meeting held in the Sochel Hall to encourage the raising of Fruit. A good specimen of the Fruit that had been raised from the seed was excubated and all tasted of the same. It was good --- Patches of various Kinds, Apples of various Kinds, Grapes exceedingly rich from Govenor Youngs.

Bishop Hunter persided. The meeting was well conducted. Great encouragment was giving to rais fruit trees.

Friday the 14 -- This Day I have got my glowings of Beef.

Seterday the 15 -- I have worked six days this week at Br. H.C. Kimball House. Likewise, we have got into a House once again at three and half Dollars per month, the first month rent free, or I have to make it fit for to live in by repairing.

Tuesday the 18 -- This Day I am sick but still at work. My wife and Children are sick with the Dierie. I sepose the reason is change of climet, having Frefs Beaf.

Seterday the 22 -- This Day my Prayers is answered. I Prayed that I might find Favour in the eyes of my Sepearer, Br. H.C. Kimball, ever since I came. I have wrought six Days. I have felt anceous to receive my Endowments. Br. H.C. Kimball called me into the House and told me that on Tuesday morning at eight o'clock, I was to bring my wife and receive my Endowments. I did not ask him, but I did pray to my Father in Heaven to put it into his heart.

Sunday the 23 -- I went to the Tabernicale. Geo. A. Smith, the Historin, one of the Twelve Apostles, gave a lecture teching upon the rise and down fall of Rome and Turkey, Mehomet and followed by P.P. Pratt. At five o'clock, myself, wife and daughter, Dorothy, bot Re Baptised by (he left this blank) close by the Govner's House in the 17 ward and got Confirmed in the 16 ward School room by (left blank).

Tuesday the 25 -- This morning at Eight o'clock, I and my wife, went to the Endowment House and received our Endowments. Got married for time and eternaty by the Holy Priesthood by Br. (blank) Glant. (probably Jedediah Grant)

Wedensday the 26 -- At work Br. Kimball was jesting alittle and told me that it would look better if I would shave my Beard off. When I went home I did so, not having been shaved for two years. Was like a Jew.

Thursday the 27 -- This Day I have received 36 pounds of Flour.

Friday the 28 -- I have bought a apron that was Painted at Navou from Bro. Wm Cahoon, two Dollars. I have to pay for the same, Saularacties 8 pounds.

Seterday the 29 -- I have sent a letter to England to my Brother, John Knox. Paid one quarter Dollar for the same.

Monday the 1 October -- I have comenced to work the Historing office that is ready for the roof. Our liven is very poor - sheafely Bread and water, but yet, we feel contented. No fire wood. I have asked and tryed to get some, but in vain.

Tusday the 2 -- I prayed to my Father in Heaven that some of the Brethern would feel after me and bring us wood. I went to work and Br. Wm Cahoon went to a Brother and got him to hall us a load of wood. This rejoiced my heart to think that the Lord is so mindfull of us.

Wedensday the 3 -- I got my porton of flour.

Thursday the 4 -- This day we got a good load wood. I, likewise seed Brother Ebeneser Gilles. He stoped all neight with us. (Brother Gilles was a friend from Sunderland, England.)

Friday the 5 -- This day I got nine pounds and quarter of Beeaf. This week I have wrought five Days.

Seterday the 6 -- This morning I have plasterd the house untill nine o'clock A.M. and went to Conforence at half past ten. Opned by singing and Brother Brigam opened by prayer. It was a prayer, indeed. A good spirit prevails and I feel it.

Bro. Brigam gave us a lecture on faith. He, likewise, declared that he would expose the sins of the people, or expose the faults that the people might learn rightousnefs. He would not Preach smoth thing to pleas and lock up the sins of no indivoudels.

Bro. H. C. Kimbell bore testimoney to the thing that Br. Brigam said. At the close, Bro. Brigam called for Br. Wm Cahoon to get all the Carpenters that belong to the Public works and plank up the out side of this boury. I helped to doe this.

The meeting is on the out Side of the Tabernical in the Tempel loat. Met again at two o'clock. A very throng, place crouded and good teachings. Adjourned until tomorrow at ten o'clock A.M.

Sunday the 7 -- Meeting opned. Bro. H.C. Kimbell prayed and it was by the power of the Holy Ghost. The place was crouded. It is good to be hear.

Parley P. Pratt Preached. He read and laid down the Propheses that had been fulfilled and those to be fulfilled so plain that the wekest capsoty could comphrand.

Met again. Orson Pratt fowled up this former Descorse and the devinontu (This word is not clear. I would guess that he means "divinity") of this Letter Day work in masterly stile.

Bro. Grant Arose and asked if this congration was tird of holding Conferenc. If not, to hold up the hand. I never seed as maney hands up in my life. We meet again tomorrow at nine o'clock.

This evening I attended the ward meeting and spoke twice. The Bishop opened the meeting and told us to make good use of the same. All seemed to sit still. I felt to embrace the time. I felt free and spoke of the first time I made an attempt to preach and how the Lord had blessed me.

Monday the 8 -- Meet again at Conference. Br. Brigham called up Elder Ludgonton who just had returned from Asia. Had mission for three years. He was very interesting.

Bro. Brigham called for the sustaining of the Authority of the Church. A clear vote. He then gave us some teachings which, if giving heed, will exalt the Saints.

Meet again. Br. H.C. Kimball gave us some teachings. He said that he wanted to see this valley filled with good spirits, that there were millions of spirits that were waiting for to take bodies. He would advise all the young Brethren to take wives and to take at the first at the least two, and that will stoop gracefully.

Wednesday the 10 -- This night I was called into Bro. Andrew Hooper's house to lay hands upon his wife Ann. She was very sick with the diphtheria. I did so and she was healed.

Friday the 12 -- This night I have met and joined a Prayer Circle that is held in the Endowment House. Bro. Fife is the President of the same. Friday Night at Seven o'clock.

Saturday 13 -- This week I have wrought five Days still at the Historing office.

Monday the 15 -- I had some time previous joined a Company called minute men. I got a musket and Bagnet and Caterage Box and belts belonging to the same. This Day has been a Praed Day with us as a military Company. Agreed to meet the last Saturday of every month to learn our exercise and it was agreed two to have a uniform Coat made of Buck skin.

Friday the 19 -- This day I have Bruised one of my Fingers. It is very sore. I have attended the prayer Circle.

Saturday 20 -- This week I have $4\frac{1}{2}$ Days. I had to quit work. My finger is so sore. The after part of the Day, I went down to the third ward to look at, or to see, after a lot, one for my self and another for Edward Wilem Gust.

Sunday the 21 -- This morning the meeting is in the Tabernacle. Br. Gibson Preached for the First time in this place. Br. Brigham fowled up the discourses. He told the saints to quit going to Doctors and there sick would cure. He held up the Book of Doctrine and Covenants and told them to send for the Elders to Lay hand.

Wednesday the 21 -- This Day I was requested by Mercy Rachel Thompson, she being the Clerk of a Female Benevolent Relief Society. Her foot was sore. I attended in the room and had a good time.

Thursday the 25 -- This Day I have taken into my House Br. John Barker and wife who came into this City last neight in the Company. They have no means. I am still of work. I have receved my alowns of Flour this week. It is just half the quantity, 17 pound. I have been at the 5 ward prayer meeting.

Friday the 26 -- This neight I have attended my Prayer Sercul in the Endowment House.

Tusday the 30 -- This neight I went with Br. Barker and wittnesed him Baptise his wife and his entended wife. Return to the house and asisted him to Confirm the same.

Wedensday 31 -- This Day Bro. Barker proposed me to Br. Robert Campbel to join the 8 Corm of Seventys. About ten o'clock this neight Bishop Roundy came for me to go and attend a sick Bro. I went and did what I could for him. He Died at twelve o'clock. I was with him alone. I laid hands on him previous to his Death. He has left a wife and six Children. I got home about three o'clock A.M.

Thursday November the 1 -- This Day I have attended a fast meeting and have asisted to Drefs and put Br. Robert Wright into his Coffen.

Friday the 2 -- This Day I have asisted to Bury Br. Wright. I attended my Prayer Sircal.

Saterdag the 3 -- This neight Br. Barker and his two wifes left my House and went to Ogdon.

Monday the 5 -- This Day I went to the fifth ward to bye a half lote for a Brother.

Friday the 9 -- This neight I have attended my Prayer Sircele meeting and had the prevlege of renewing tokings and signs of the everlasting Priesthood.

Saterdag the 10 -- This neight it comenced to snow.

Sunday the 11 -- It snowed all Day.

Monday the 12 -- This Day I went to work after Dinner.

Friday the 16 -- This neight I attended my prayer sircell.

Saterdag the 17 -- This week I wrought 49 Hours.

Sunday the 18 -- This is a fine Day and the Snow nearly all melted in town. Attended Publice Worship as usuly.

Friday the 23 -- I attended the Prayer Sircel as usuel.

Saterdag the 24 -- This week I have wrought 54 Hours still in the Carpenter's shoap. This day it snowd very fast. On last Tusday I agreed with Br. Graham for two loads of fire wood for my Riffle. I have got about 17 pounds of Corn Meal. This is the first.

Sunday the 25 -- I attended Public worship.

Monday the 26 -- This Day I am sick but still at work.

Tuesday the 27 -- This morning, about one o'clock, I got up very sick. Took two doses of salts and Pucked severly. It was somthing like a Billious Colice. I contuned very sick untill about day light. I got some better and got adminstered two.

I think the reason is we live so poor, half pound of Flour per day and a little meet. Potatoes and Squash is the most of our food, and to work hard. Yet, I feel thankful for what I do git. I have taken to dose of Caster oil. I got worse toward neight. I again applyed to the Elders. Got anointed with oil and hands laid on.

Wedensday the 28 -- I have got a good neight sleep and feel better. The Teacher told me that my porton of work at the Kneel was laid out. I went to my Bofs and told him. He set me to Squire Wells to tell him that he wanted me in the Carpenter Shoap. The Squire said that was not much wisdom to set a Carpenter to a labours work. I had to find a man if I could. If I could not, for the Bishop to find one.

Thursday the 20 -- I have deleavored my mefsage to the Bishop. I am still sick. Have more castor oil. About, diging at the Knell.

Friday the 30 -- This morning I have taken two doses of Caststeel soap.

December 1 -- Setterday. I went to work. I have made 18 Hours this week.

Sunday the 2 -- It is cold and frosty. I attended Public worship and heard Br. Amose Slimon, one of the Twelve Apostles, for the first time. His subject was to get Zion in our own harts.

Wedensday the 5 -- This neight I attended the lefser Priesthood meeting according to Bishop Roundy's request. I was set apart to act as a teacher over the Block that I reside in at present in room of Brother Lawson. He neglected to doe his duty.

Thursday the 6 -- This neight I have entered upon my duty as a Teacher. Visited the flock comited to my charge and deleavored that what I was counceled to doe.

Friday the 7 -- This neight I have attended my Corm at the Prayer Siricle and had good time.

Setterday the 8 -- This week I have wrought 54 hours and, at neight, I again visited in the Capasity of a Teacher.

Sunday the 9 -- This morning I have visited some of my little flock, imparted such as I had as a Teacher and attended Public Worship and Bro. Amos Slimon. His subject was to git truth and practice the same.

Thursday the 13 -- This neight I attended the ward meeting and enjoyed myself.

Friday 14 -- This neight I have attended my Prayer Sircul and, for the first time, was the mouth piece to the Sircul. I felt my weeknefs in coming so near to my Father in Heaven.

Seterday the 15 -- This week I have wrought 50 Hours. This after noon it very stormy. Snow.

I got some wood from my Bofs, Miles Romeny, to make some Seats and a Stand for a Clock which I got on the 13 Thursday. It cost 12\$. The price in St. Louis is 5\$.

At the same time, I got three pare of shoes. My shoes cost 4\$. My wife cost 2.75. Dorothy's cost 2\$. This neight I have put a seat together and made the stand for the Clock. I could not get it go. We had but one Candle. It burned out about three week ago.

I got a small load of wood. I gave my Riffel to Br. Gram to bring me two loads of good wood, two coards. I have got about $1\frac{1}{2}$ cords.

Sunday the 16 -- I have attended Public worship. It fare but very cold.

Friday the 21 -- This neight I have attend my Prayer Sircle and felt good.

Seterday 22 -- This very corse. Drifting Snow. Worked 54.

Sunday the 23 -- It is very cold. Meet once in the Tabernucl. It was two cold to meet aney more, but the ward misionores is to preach in every ward. This neight I was ordand a Seventy in the eight Corm under the Hands President Peek Hide and four or five more. Hide was the mouth. Great blefsings was pronounced upon my head, to go to the Nations and work mericels.

Monday the 24 -- Got two Dollars for Christmefs.

Tusday the 25 -- Christmafs Day. It is extremely cold. Br. John Petery and wife was at my house. We are short of fire wood which makes us rather uncomfortable.

Wednesday the 26 -- This Day it is too cold to work, but I went round to my round of Teaching to notify all to attend the School Room to see whether a school could be opened or not Agreed to be.

Thursday the 27 -- I attended the ward meeting.

Friday 28 -- I attended the ward meeting.

Friday 28 -- I attended my Prayer Sercul. Still extremely cold.

Setterday the 29 -- Have wrought 36 hours.

Sunday the 30 -- This is still extremely cold. Meet one in the Tabernicle. Two cold to contuney.

Monday the 31 -- Still exceedenly cold. I have attended a meeting of the Teachers to deside concerning the School Teacher.

Tusday the 1 of Janury, 1856 -- I have spent this day at home doing some little jobs, a little Chore. I have brought the last wood into the house. It is still frosty. The snow still lies. The street is covered with ice. The water that runs has scattered all over which makes travling rather dangrefs.

Wednesday the 2 -- Still cold. I attended the Teachers meeting and represented my Field of labour.

Thursday the 3 -- Still cold. This is the day that we git our flour, a half pound per day. The mill is froz, no flour. This is rather pinched times. Potates very scarce. I attended the ward meeting.

Friday the 4 -- This day we got a Bushell Potatoes and attended my Prayer Sircull.

Setterday the 5 -- I have wrought 44 hours this week. It snowed a little. I got some Corn Meel, half pound to each, and about 5 pounds of Pork.

Sunday the 6 -- Not quit as cold. I attended the Tabernivrrll. Likewise, my Corm, the 8 Corm of Seving (Seventies).

Thursday the 10 -- I have visited Br. Lawson, his wife having left him. I had them together and tried to reconsole them but in vain. I descharged my duty as a teacher.

Friday -- This week I have worked 36 hours. This Day I have put, or framd, the 5 ward School Room roof and attended my Prayer Sircul.

Setterday the 12 -- Still working at the School Room and at neight attended my visiting as a teacher.

Sunday the 13 -- This morning Br. Wm Thompson let me have about 20 pounds of flour. I attended the tabernucle and attend the 5 ward meeting.

Tusday the 15 -- Br. Wm Thompson sent us a load of fire wood. It is a great blefsing for we were out and the wether is very cold.

Wedensday the 16 -- This neight I attended the teacher's meeting and got instructions to go round and get the value of all that the saints prosefs.

Thursday the 17 -- I attended a ward meeting.

Friday the 18 -- At one o'clock I was done work making 42 hours. The scarcity of wood is the caus of the same. I attended my Prayer Sircule meeting.

Setterday the 19 -- This day I made a little Chare.

Sunday the 20 -- I attended the tabernucle and after I visited the Saints and attended my Corm of Seventys.

Monday the 21 -- Still cold wether. I fulfilled my apointments as a teacher in asertuning (ascertaining), or writing on a sheet of paper, what all the people are worth in Property and every thing els. This is delevered to the Bishop.

Thursday the 24 -- I have attended the ward meeting.

Friday 25 -- This neight I attended my Prayer Sercule meeting. Br. Wm Thompson let me have 63 pound of Beef set down to my wages. Attended a great mas meeting to get a exprefs from Mifsoura to California.

Sunday the 27 Very cold. Snow bing thick. Attended Tabernicle. Hard Br. Bragham, Br. Heber and (can't figure out last name. It looks like Jugech)

Wedensday the 30 -- I attended the Teacher meeting.

Thursday the 31 -- This neight I attended the ward meeting.

Friday the 31 -- This Febuary neight I attended my Prayer Sircule.

Febuary the 2 -- Setterday. I attended a meeting in the Tabernicle. Ballard Band of Brafs instruments was there and played severel tunes. The Daily mail or Exprefs is to proseed from the States to California.

Sunday the 3 -- Still very cold. I attend the Tabernicle. Parly P. Pratt Preached. His subject was how to save fire wood, how to sow wheat in dreads. Bro. Heber C. Kimball fowelled after and gave some beautiful teaching and said that every one that had flour & Corn meal that it would have to come out and sold to the pore at six cents per pound. The Gentiles marchents would not escape. This is trully a time of scarsity. A great maney are suffering for the want of Bread. The Cattle are Dien of. The winter is so cold. Snow and frost contuninues.

Wednesday the 6 -- I have had a Table with a Drawr. The legs is turned. I charged \$3.50 for the same for Tithing. Likewise, half Day \$1 $\frac{1}{4}$. On Monday the 3, I got one and half Bushel of Potatoes. Br. Wm Thompson let me have them. This is a great blefing.

Thursday the 7 -- This is the Day that I should get my Flour or Corn Meal at the Public works. I took my bag away. We had about two pound left in the House. My alouns is stoped. I had to come home empty. I have to go round the Block in the Capasty of Teacher and asertain what amount of Provisions there is. I am idle. Nothing to doe. I attended the ward meeting.

Friday the 8 -- I have attended the Sircule. Prayer meeting.

I have given in the amounts of Provisions that is in the block that I am Teacher. Upon an everage, if it was equal divided, it prehaps would provision the People one month and to be very carful at that. This is hard times. No work. No provisions to get. Many are suffering.

The amount that I had, or have, on the 7 of Febuary 1856, is 7 pounds of Flour, 16 pounds of Beaf, one Bushell of Potatoes. When to git more, I don't know. Likewise, out of Fire wood.

Satterday the 9 -- More Snow.

Sunday the 10 -- I attended the Tabernicel. Arson Pratt Preached. His Subject was Salvation, The thing that out to sircumscribe all thing and be upermost in our minds, that poverty should not put us about, for we have to die in some way or another and, if it was the Lord's will for us to starve to death, it would make no difference, but we have don the best that we can.

The Lord will Chesten his People untill they work rightous. He said that the name of God was taken in vain. A young man was cut out for swaring.

Monday the 11 -- This morning I went to H.C. Kimball to ask councell about going to Carson Velly. He said that was not to go. I told him that I had no work and that I was told to branch out wher ever I would get the same and Bro. Forstgreen would take me and my Femely.

He, Bro. Kimball, said he would put me through the bad time, but I had to doe the best that I could to git Provisons, for he was short himself and that he had a large Femely to seport, 76 in the Femely. We have about two pounds of Flour. This is hard times indeed, no fire wood but what I bring from the Public Works, Shavens. We eat twice per day and not settise our slves, but very sparnley. I attended the Jublee of the Seventys. Heard good instruction and, at neight, a Consort of the same.

Tuesday the 12 -- I again attended the Jubilee. There was good techings. Bro. (left blank) spoke a great deal about the saints destining and selling their Wheet to the Gentiles and not regarding the Council of the first Presidency for we have been warned year after year to lay up the grain, or wheet, against the time of faming.

In consequence of not harken to Councile, the Lord sent the Grafshopper to destroy our crops and then drouth and then a very severe winter and a great many Cattle dieing. Thus we see the Lord Scurgan his people.

Br. Fenes Young fowelled up the remarks and said that Br. Pulsipher had spoke the truth, but one thing he had not said, how the poor was to be provided for. Bro. Feneus said that the thing now is for those that have to asist those that have not. Br. Joseph Young carried out Br. Feneus remarks in a felling of simapathy.

Wedensday the 13 -- This neight I attended the Teacher's meeting. Got nothing to do, yet have to go hungary.

Thursday the 14 -- I went and seed Bro. Kimball. He told me that I was to try to doe if I could. I told him that I had tryed to get work for to git Bread but could not. I told him that did not want to be a burden on him or aney one els for, if I could not git Bread for work, I have come here to worship the Lord and if I lived I live, or if I die, it is all the same.

He told me that there was maney kinds of Spirits and that was a good spirit and that was a good spirit that would ask, but he said that he would not let me nor my Femely starve. I went home and mad a garden rake. I got garden seed, cents 40.

Friday the 15 -- This day I went down to the 5 ward and worked $\frac{1}{2}$ day on the school house shingling. Got dinner at five o'clock and attended the prayer sercil.

Seterday the 16 -- This day I went Bro. Samul Richards to try to git work from him to work at the 5 ward school hous to be paid with Flour or Corn Meal or Potatoes, but in vain.

Sunday the 17 -- I attended Tabernial. Br. Brigham told us that whether in Bisnefs or in Preaching, he liked to come right to the thing without many words, that we would never ceas to learn. There was one clas that would sceas to learn, they that deny the faith and the Lord. That clafs would go back untill they, there spirit was disorgnised which is the second death. He said whenever you see people wanting to go to some good place or clamet, they will either apostise or be driven from it. This people, when ever they go to Jackson County will go from the west to the east.

I attended the Seventy meeting.

Monday the 18 -- This Day I meet Br. H.C. Kimball. He asked me if I had got any work yet. I told him, "no". He told me to come tomorrow.

Tuesday the 19 -- I commenced work at the above place getting out flooring. We have very little to eat. I get some Squash, a little shorts, bread and a small piece of Beef. This has to serve me all Day until night. My family the same. At dinner time I feel hungry.

Wednesday the 20 -- Br. H.C.K. told me to bring a bag for some flour.

Thursday the 21 -- This night I got 16 pound of Flour and $3\frac{1}{2}$ pound of Bacon. I attended the ward meeting.

Friday the 22 -- I attended the prayer circle. It was proposed to meet at seven o'clock. The days getting longer. Agreed two.

Saturday the 23 -- This day I have finished the work at present at Br. H.C.K. I have worked 44 hours. He told me to go to the Shop on Monday morning and commence there to make Dressing Machines and to report my self to Br. Davis and I had to come to him for provisions. This is a great Blessing.

Sunday the 24 -- This is a fine morning. I and my wife went to the tabernacle. It is crowded. Br. Brigham got up and testified against the lawyers, against their unrighteous courts and against Elders seeking to be Jurymen for the sake of a little sugar and tea and flour, that they would serve the Devil for the same.

Judge Snow should not set any longer in this stand. He was a disgrace to this people. He pronounced a curse upon all that would seek to encourage lawyers and courts but especially against Judge Snow. He said that they would wither away from this time.

The Congregation said "Amen" to it. He said that Judge Snow would wither away, his cattle, his children. This curse was placed upon Judge Snow. The Congregation said, "Amen" to it.

He said that Judge Snow was sitting at his right hand. He would want to speak but he would not allow him. He would rather kick him out of the stand.

He, Brigham, said that he would send to Astoria (Australia), East Indies (East Indies) and other places unworthy men out of our midst. Names were called over to go upon missions.

Monday the 25 -- This morning I commenced to make a Dressing Machine to sow wheat in order to save wheat.

Wednesday the 27 -- I attended the Teachers meeting. A case was tried before the Bishop. Br. Jarvis had to pay, but he declared that he would not.

Thursday the 28 -- This neight I went to Br. Kimbels for my flour, half pound per Day. Sister Kimble gave me $1\frac{1}{2}$ pound out of her own. Likewise, about four pounds of Flesh meet. May God blefs her.

Friday the 29 -- I attended my prayer sercial.

Setterday, March 1, 1856 -- I am done at the mecheen for the want of the iron work. I have worked 50 hours. It is still cold and frosty.

(At the back of Book #4, William Knox has written this verse.)

1

What a fool is a single man.
He's like the handle of a warming pan.
He's like a jar without a handle.
He's like a stick without a candle.

Chorus

A batchelor, an old batchelor, oh!
Of what use in the world is he,
A dotard, a driveler oh!
O maidens, O maidens, he! he!

2

A man's an ass without a wife,
He has no joy, no peace in life,
He's like a stump of a withered tree
Uslefs on earth
Uselefs is he.

Chorus

3

He must sit alone by the fire,
No wife or child has he to admire.
He must cook, slush, and butler be
Boil the kettle and make the tea.

Chorus

4

He must rinseth kettle & wash the pan
Bake and boil the best way he can.
Must light the fire, and make the bed.
Poor old man head better be dead.

Chorus

5

He's like the leg of a footlefs stocking.
He's no cradle to set a rocking.
He's like a boot without a sole,
A snarling thing, he's sport for all.

Chorus

6

He's like a shepard without a dog,
He's not so useful as the hog.
His days, they pass in splen & gloom.
O' save me from the batchelor's doom.

Chorus

7

Young maidens all hear my ditty,
On old batchelors have some pity.
Life to them pafses without joy,
They have no wife, no girl, no boy.

Chorus

8

He, to market, alone must go.
The ladies cry, a batchelor, oh!
Home he returns, feels quite forlorn
And wishes he had never been born.

Chorus

9

And now my story, I will end
Hoping that the world soon will mend.
Every man a woman gain.
Every woman a man obtain.

Chorus

John Barker

The last five pages of Book #4, William Knox has written some miscellaneous notes:

School 5 Ward

Janery the 11 - 1856 One Day work
 Do the 12 - one Day
 Febuary 15 -- half Day Planeg Floring
 March the 6 - 1857 - one Day
 March the 7 - one day
 Worked for the School Room in the fifth ward
 3 Days and half - 1856
 March the 6 & 7 - 2 Days at the same
 7 Days and half in all

Martha Collingwood
 Departed or Died December the 21 - 1847
 June the 20, 1857 - 6 days
 making 13½ Days in all
 \$33 - 75

Junery paid to Bishop Winter
 Thursday the 25 - paid one plug Tobacco 75
 Sunday the 30 - tobacco one plug 75
 Sunday the 6 of Junery, 1856 tobacco 75
 Friday the 11 of Junery, 1856 one day
 at the 5 ward School Room
 Setterday the 12 one Days work
 Monday the 14 one plug Tobacco 75
 Friday the 15 of Febuary one half Day
 Wedensday the 19 of March one plug tobacco 75
 Friday the 25 April half Plug tobacco 40
 one Day planing Floring

My name sale (shall) be in the Temple of
 our God be faithful and thou shalt

This people, when ever they go to Jackson County
 will go from the west to the east
 up 50 yards Crop 100 5 ward west Block
 Claud Clive put dore to the 7
 Councelle Hall

August the 28 - 1843
 Baptised by John Fraizer

Elisabeth Knox Born the 15 June 1819
 Baptised by John Barker
 October the 12, 1842
 Block 16 Plot A lot 2 x 2 x 3
 Married August 1 - 1842
 Bishop Wearmouth
 Durham

1838	1838
1811	1815
27	23

(The last several pages are just scribbles)
when ever you see 'people wat to got to a ple

Lamb _____ Danel Wood - lot N^o 4

Mifs A B Trip 16 N

Hemenway 76 Soule

Danel Wood N^o 4

M Thompson 16

56 Bushels from Peek

Tuesday morning 8 clock
32 Days

Robert Nelson Farmenton

on the Corner of Main St

Desert Store 56 B from
Miles Romeny 7

Thomas Cowdy

Bishop Hunter (can't read)

John Nebeger

Isac Whittier

WHAT YOU CAN EXPECT TO READ IN THE
WILLIAM KNOX DIARY BOOK 5

I have never seen Book #5 of the William Knox diary. At one time it was in possession of Vera Peart. A typed copy was made and I have a copy of that. Vera Peart said that someone borrowed the 5th book and never returned it. She couldn't remember who. It is fortunate that we have a copy of the material written therein. If anyone has that book, please come forward.

Book #5 starts where Book #4 left off. It covers a period from February 1856 to January 1, 1865. William didn't die until February of 1892. It seems almost certain that there are writings still to be found of his later years. Probably these are in the possession of his second wife's family.

1856

- Mar. 2 -- Got sick from eating watery potatoes.
- Mar. 15 -- Bought a house and half lot in 5th Ward for \$150.00
- Mar. 17 -- Authorities drew up a petition to make Utah a free state.
- Mar. 24 -- Dug up roots to eat. Moved into new place.
- Apr. 16 -- Got 17½ lbs. flour for family of 5 for 7 days.
- May 6, 1856 -- Started for Bear River to take some boats.
William said he went mostly for food because there was none at home.
- May 31 -- Worked at the "Timely Gull" to sail on Salt Lake.
(Worked off and on at the Timely Gull
and at the canal)
- July 7 -- Got to take another wife.
- July 13 -- Got in an argument with Bishop Winters. Brigham Young had to settle dispute.
- July 23 -- Goes to Provo looking for work.
(William did some wheat cutting and got
50 lbs. of flour.)
- Aug. 23 -- (in Provo Area) Got a loan of a blanked. Worked two days and got a half bushel of wheat.
(After some hard times in Provo Area,
he started home on Aug. 31)
- Oct 21-22 -- Sick and has ingrown toe nail.
- Dec. 30, 1856 -- Last company of Handcarts came into city. Hundreds have died, frozen and worn out. B. Young did all he could to save them. Took Hannah Haek and her two children and Katherine Tarn into his home. He asked Bishop Hunter for some soap to clean up the sisters.

- Dec. 31, 1856 -- Told Brigham Young that he would like to step Katheryn Tarn.
- Jan. 18, 1857 -- Took Katheryn Tarn to be second wife. There was a wedding dinner. Had a good time. (I wonder what his wife, Elizabeth was doing.)
- Feb. 27 -- Sealed to Katheryn.
- Mar. 11 -- Daughter, Elizabeth Jane, fell in a fit when she got frightened because William cut off the head of a chicken.
- April 6 -- Conference. About 5,250 people in attendance.
- Apr. 20 -- On Military Duty.
- Apr. 23 -- A company of missionaries left.
- June 7 -- B. Young announced that next Sunday he would read stories being published in the States about the Mormons.
- June 23 -- News came that Parley P. Pratt was killed.
- June 30 -- Bought a cow and calf for \$40.00.
- July 5, 1857 -- 42 years old.
- July 24 -- A host of saints celebrating up Big Cottonwood Canyon. Porter Rockwell came from the States and said 25 hundred soldiers were on way to wipe out the Mormons.
- (Volunteers called for. William is sent north to Blackfoot. Territory under Marshall Law.)
- Sept. 25 -- Soldiers have paid no attention to warnings, but doubled their march. They are 200 miles from Salt Lake. Our boys sent to put their camp into confusion.
- Mon. 28th -- Word came that our men have not succeeded in stampeding their cattle because they were hobbled. Soldiers are near Fort Bridger.
- Sept. 29 -- William has left his family with half pound of bread stuffs and potatoes.
- Oct. 2 -- Got to Box Elder. Was weighed -- 155 lbs.
- Nov. 12, 1857 -- Returned to Salt Lake. (I am not sure the purpose of this mission. They did some "scouting".)
- Nov. 29 -- The enemy has gone back to Bridger. Over 1900 soldiers and teamsters. Their mules and oxen have died by the hundreds. They have sent to New Mexico to get mules.
- Dec. 5, 1857 -- General Wells has come home. Left a few brethren to watch movements of the enemy which is reported 2500 in number.

- Dec. 7, 1857 -- Gentiles have all cleared out of Valley.
- Dec. 20 -- Had a fight with his neighbor who said William had killed Sister Fry's cock.
- Dec. 24 -- Had a dancing party in the Ward.
- Dec. 31 -- William has made \$464 dollars this year.

1858

(William works very often at the "Public".
He is interested in his Military Duties.
He speaks often of attending Ward meetings
and attending to his Church duties.)

- Jan. 19 -- Brigham Young spoke on "home manufacturing". A standing army of 1,000 to be kept by Wards.
- Jan. 24 -- Soldiers are coming by way of California.
- Feb. 21st -- Had a disagreement with Bishop Winter who said William's chickens were eating his wheat. William said that Winter's horses ran in his lot. To settle things, William killed his 11 chickens, but he didn't feel good about it.
- Feb. 28 -- Went to conference. So crowded they had to stand. Dorothy fainted and was carried out.
- March 8 -- Indians have killed and wounded several brethren and drove off their cattle. Brigham Young sent Col. Kane to Bridger to meet with U.S. Army there.
- March 13 -- Baby boy born to Elizabeth -- named "William". Weighed $8\frac{1}{2}$ lbs.
- Mar. 21-27 -- People preparing to go South and burn everything behind to avoid the U.S. Army.
- April 6 -- Fire arms examined. Men called to go on guard in the mountains.
- Apr. 9, 1858 Catheryn has a 9 lb. son. Named "John".
- Apr. 25 -- U.S. official, A. Cummings, came into City. Brigham Young and the mayor met with him. He was asked to use his influence to have soldiers withdraw from the territory.
- (People are going South.)
- May 11, 1858 -- William and family leave Salt Lake. Leaves his family in Lehi and returns to Salt Lake. Houses are deserted, windows nailed up. Lots of fruit on the trees.

(William made several trips back and forth to Provo.)

July 2, 1858 -- Roads lined with wagons returning back North.
On July 5th William brings his family back.

July 12 -- Another disagreement with the Bishop over hay.

Jan. 1, 1859 -- The first time the Tabernacle has been open since the move. The organ is now in the center of the Tabernacle and a division down the middle to separate the males from the females.

Feb. 3 -- William's wives are not getting along. On the 13th one of his wives threatens to leave.

March 7 -- His wives full of a bad spirit, Elisabeth repented but Catherine is stubborn.

March 22 -- Signed a petition to remove U.S. soldiers from every thickly settled place in Utah.

(Life seems somewhat back to normal.)

Aug. 1, 1859 -- Voted for Territorial Officers.

Jan. 8, 1860 -- William defends Sister Senea when the Bishop cuts her off for not attending meetings.

Jan. 15 -- Bishop calls on Saints to confess their faults. He calls Bro. Knox a mean man. Sister Senea restored to Church.

Feb. 26 -- Erastus Snow preached. Wm Knox asked if the people had a right to vote against the Bishop without worrying about being cut off. Br. Snow said, "Yes."

Apr. 10 -- Had a few words with Bishop Winter.

July 2 -- William writes to Brigham Young asking for the removal of Bishop Winters.

(Starts working at the Nail Factory)

Dec. 26, 1860 -- Made \$629.35 dollars this year. (Things are looking up for William.)

April 19, 1861 -- Elizabeth has baby boy named Thomas. Weighed 8½ lbs.

July 16 -- Elizabeth is cutting wheat. U.S. soldiers have gone back to the States.

(In the last few pages of Book #5, William moves his family to Logan where he plans to be a farmer. It didn't work out so he returns to Salt Lake, but his wife, Elizabeth and her family remain in Logan. She is buried in the Smithfield cemetery.)

BOOK #5

Largest brown book -

Thursday 21 - This night I have 16 lbs of flour and $3\frac{1}{2}$ pounds of bacon.

Sat. 23 Feb. - This day I have finished at present at Br. H.C. Kimballs. He told me to go to the shop on Monday to make drilling machines to save wheat and I had to come to him for provisions, half pound of bread stuff per day. This is a great blessing.

Mon. 25 Feb., 1856 -- I commenced to make the frames for the drilling machines to save the wheat.

Thurs. 28 Feb. -- I went to Brother H.C. Kimball's for my rations. Sister Kimball gave me one and a half pounds of her own. They were all stinted; likewise about four pounds of fresh beef. May God bless her.

Sat. Mar. 1, 1856 -- I have done work at this for the want of iron. Still cold and frosty.

Mar. 2 -- This morning we got some potatoes for breakfast. I went to the Tabernacle. I was sick when I came home. I found my wife sick in bed. The potatoes were watery and bad eating them on an empty stomache.

Mar. 3 -- Commenced to work at the Public carpenter shop full time and a hungry time.

Mar. 15 -- Saturday. This day I have bought a house and a half lot in the 5th Ward for \$150.00 from Guser Wells. I have to work it out.

Mar. 17 -- This day the authorities of Utah has assembled to draw up a petition to the general Government of the United States for this Utah to be a free state called "Deseret". Big guns is firing, flags is flying.

Mar. 24 -- This day we came to our new place in the 5th Ward. We dug up roots to eat. They are a great help.

Mar. 29 -- This night to be the presiding teacher of the 5th Ward.

April 16. Wed., 1856 -- I have got my allowance of flour from the Public. $17\frac{1}{2}$ lbs. for 7 days for five in family.

Friday the 18th -- I have commenced to build two ferry boats for Joseph Young.

Sat. 19 -- I got 7.50 from Joseph Young to try to get bread stuff.

May 6, 1856 -- The boats is finished. Brother H.T. Silcock and myself started with the boats for Bear River. Brigham,

Heber and Joseph Young and some more went along. I and Brother Silcock went mostly on account to get our food for we had but little at home. Money couldn't buy flour. We got to the River on Thursday and launched them off the wagons into the river.

Friday 9th of May -- We got 1.50 a piece to get some flour on our way home. We got home on Sunday night, the 11th of May. We worked in all 15 and 3/4 days at the boats.

May 31 -- I worked at the Timely Gull, 3 3/4 days making her into a sloup to sail upon the Salt Lake.

Sunday, June 1st -- A vote was taken to bring the water down the canal. I voted to go Monday the 2nd. I have been at the canal working.

Thursday the 5th - I worked at the Slupe.

Fri. 6 May - Worked at the canal

Sat. 7th - Sick at home.

Mon. 9 June, 1856 - Worked at the canal.

June 11 -- Worked four days at the canal this week.

June 15 -- Commenced at the Timely Gull again.

June 23 -- Worked in all at the Timely Gull 11 and 3/4 days. This week we have had four lbs. of flour and 4 lbs. of corn meal. Hard times.

June 24 -- I left Jordan Bridge on board the Timely Gull bound for the Great Salt Lake. Returned on the 5th of July, 1856 - my birthday.

July 7th -- Attended Brother H. Davidson's case before the First Presidency. It went off well and we got leave to take another wife.

July 10 -- This day I started, together with Brother H.T. Silcock and Brother John Petery, north to seek work. There was plenty of work, but the people had enough to do to get food for themselves, none to spare, so we had to return again. We traveled about 60 miles and very little to eat. The last place that we called was Ogden Hole. So, we started for home to travel all night.

It got dark so we laid ourselves down along side of the Weber River for about two hours and started again. We left Brother J. Petery at Farmington. We began to feel like to get some breakfast but we hadn't any money. We called at Brother John Allison's house and asked for some breakfast. They had, but would not impart to us. We felt very hungry and so we went into a poor Welch house. The old sister gave us what she had. It was a great blessing to us. We got home about 7 o'clock on Monday night.

Monday 13th of July -- This morning, I went to Bishop T.W. Winters, to square up with him. I had previously bought one half lot in the same block that my house is on. A very poor place. I bought it to pay the school taxes. To work carpenter work upon the school house, the amount of \$10.00. That is the way I understood the bargain and a deal one at that.

I went to the Bishop. He was working in his lot. I spoke to him very swell and told him that I would like to square up with him for I had worked up to the amount and some over. He said that I had not. I told him I had worked over the \$10.00. He said that I had ten more to pay. I could not understand that way of doing business. He directly flew into a spasm and told me that I was a bad man and used very bad language to me. I did not expect it for I was very swell and wanted to reason with him, so I thought it was high time to defend myself and character.

He walked away towards the house and stood in the doorway and continued to abuse me and I could not stand to hear a man abuse me without cause, , so I put my fist right across his nose and told him that, if he did not quit his abuse, that I would knock him down, and I would have done it, but he stopped and I left him. Could not get any reason or anything in the shape of settling.

I now had to consider what course to take for he is Bishop of the Ward and, no doubt, he would try to cut me off from the Church. I went and told Brother Brigham Young my case and he told me to bring Bishop Winters up to him. I did so. I told my story and he told his, but he told things that was not the truth.

I told him that he lied or that he was a liar. I could not sit and hear him act a hypocrite. It was out of place, but I could not stand it. Brigham Young told me that I should not call a man a liar in his presence.

I asked his forgiveness and it was granted. Never-the-less, it was so. Brother Brigham told me that there was one thing that I had not learned yet. I asked what it was. He said that I had to give to him that asketh. Bro. Brigham said to me, "Bro. Knox, I will pay the \$10.00 for you." I said, "No. If I have to die, let me die like a man. I want to pay."

Bro. Brigham directed his discourse to the Bishop and told him that it was a good thing for him that Brother Knox did not strike him for he would have given you such a threshing as you would not like.

Said he, "I know Knox. He works with sharp-edged tools and you, Bishop, ought to learn to work with sharp-edged tools." Said Brother Brigham, "I know I could work and be with Brother Knox through all time and never change a word with Brother Knox."

I told them that it was not for the sake of the ten dollars that I had brought up the Bishop, but for the abuse and, if he ever lifted it again, I would bring him up again and there was not one in the Ward that sustained him because of his abuse.

He was continually rading up old sores. Bishop Winters said that there was a few Scotsmen against him. He tried to do me all the injury he could, but it was no use. I had a good friend at the helm. This Ward is in a bad, grumbling state at present. I know it. Brother Brigham gave us some good council and dismissed.

July 20 -- Sabbath. I attended the Bowrey. Brigham Young. He said that when Elders laid on hands for the Gift of the Holy Ghost, he should correct it in this way. It should be "receive ye the Holy Ghost."

July 22 -- This morning, I left my family again to seek work. I started for the South and left them to find the best way that they could. I walked to Lehi which is 32 miles. Nothing in my pocket. I stopped at Bro. Falkers. Got supper and bed.

Wed. 23 July - Got breakfast and started. Landed at Provo and stopped at Brother Ebenezer Gillises'. No work. Kindly received.

Thurs. 24 July - I turned out to seek work. I am now sitting at the old saw mill writing my journal. Poor times. No money in my pocket, yet, I feel pretty good. What the future is, I don't know. This afternoon, I took an acre of wheat to cut with a sickle, to get two bushels of wheat to cut, bind and set it up - most of its laid down.

Sat. 26 July -- I have been out all day. I am very slow. It's strange to me. I have strained my left hand. It is so sore and swelling. I suffer much from pain. I am boarding at Brother Simpsons and sleep at a hay stack at night.

Sun. 27 July -- I am now sitting in the bowery to hear the preaching. The preaching commenced and they were exhorted to send in the tithing to the city that the Public hand might have bread.

Tues 29 July -- I have finished the wheat cutting. My hand is very sore.

Wed. 30th -- I have worked all day for Brother Simoson harvesting.

Thurs. 31st -- Brother Simpson could not board me any longer. Not for want of food but too much trouble for his wife to cook. I got breakfast at Brother Springs and commenced work at his sawmill, up the canyon to do mill-right work and to live upon bread and water. Brother Markam is my partner. This is not an agreeable job. I have to take poor baked bread and sometimes none and drink water and lie on the bare ground in a small shanty.

Sunday, August 10th -- This day I went to Provo to see Bro. E. Giles, but did not see him. I have sent 50# of flour to my wife and family in great Salt Lake City by Sutherland.

Friday, Aug. 15 -- I have not slept much this night thinking to get my pay and how to get to the city 60 miles off. I have given up the job. No prospect of getting paid. I have no place to sleep. It rained pretty fast. I got into Bro. McDonald's wagonbed.

Sat. 16th -- This morning I am trying to borrow some flour that I may have some bread to eat. I got 11 lbs. Sister Strickland baked it for me. I eat bread and live in the open air. This is the hardest place that I was ever in.

I have worked 13 days at the mill and cannot get paid and a stranger in this place. I was to be paid in lumber for the very first that was cut and I would turn it into breadstuff. The mill is going and cutting lumber but I cannot get either lumber or breadstuff. McDonald and Spreg is in partners with the mill.

I have taken some wheat to pull up by the root. I am to get the one half for my trouble. It is six miles from the fort. I started for the wheat. It rained most of the way and I was wet through and cold when I came to the wheat. I commenced to work to warm myself. I am here alone, no place to sleep but upon the damp ground. 1 piece of cover to cover me.

Sun. 17 -- It was very cold. I could not sleep. I got up, I suppose about 2 o'clock in the morning and worked by the light of the moon.

Mon. 18th -- Worked all day and all night. Too cold to sleep upon the ground. My hands are getting very sore and the ground is getting very hard.

Tues. 19th -- I have worked all day and come to Fort in the same fix. No place to board.

Wed. 20th -- This morning I want to try and get the remainder of my pay from Andrew Wheelock for cutting his acre of wheat. I told him that I had no place to board and nothing to eat. Got nothing. My hands is very sore.

Thurs. 21st -- This morning, I got 86 pounds of wheat from Andrew Wheelock. I took it to the mill. It should have been 90 lbs. He wronged me out of 18 pounds of flour. This beats all the places that I was ever in. I got it ground and got some baked.

Friday, 22 August -- This morning I commenced to work for Bro. McDonald pulling down a spanish wall. To be paid one bushel and a half of wheat for two days. To find my own bread and he would find vegetables.

Sat. 23rd -- This morning I got a better rest. I got a loan of a blanket. I have worked two days for McDonald and got one and a half bushels of wheat.

Sun. 24th -- I am done at the McDonalds. Bread and water again. I attended the Bowery at Springville to hear the preaching. Bro. D. Carter, from Provo, preached. A collection was taken for him to help him rebuild his blacksmith shop that was burned down.

Mon. 25 -- This day I am pulling wheat. I left some upon the ground. The wild geese is eating it up.

Friday 29th -- This morning, I don't know to get it hauled up to the Fort. Edward Hales' wife done my washing for me. I asked the owners of the wheat to haul it for me, but they would not -- that was Sprig and McDonald.

Aug. 30 -- Brother D.H. Sutherland let me have a yoke of oxen and a wagon. I went and brought it to the Fort. This is the first wheat that I have ever hauled for myself. I had a beginning this night.

Brother E. Gilles came to Springville and stopped all night. I put the wheat into Hugh Sutherland's stake yard. I could not get it thrashed out and I left it in Brother D.H. Sutherland's care to thresh it and send it to me. He agreed to it. I had waited long enough trying to get my pay from the saw mill but in vain. The due bill for the same is in the hands of Brother D. Simpson.

Aug. 31st -- Sunday morning -- I started for home in company with Bro. Andrew Horn and bade farewell to Springville. Got dinner at Provo at Brother E. Gilles and started again. We got to Battle Creek just at dark. I asked the Bishop's Counselor for his name, if he could let me lie down in some place where there was a cover. He told us to come into the house. We did. I had a long conversation with him, told him where I had been and for what purpose -- to try and get some bread stuff for my family.

Supper time came. He was called to supper. He went and left us to sit in the next room but there happened to be one of his wives in the same room, in bed -- appeared to be sick.

He came to us and showed us where to sleep. He said that he had not invited us to supper. The reason was, there were so many imposters. I told him that we did not ask him for anything to eat, only a place to shelter to lie down.

He felt ashamed of his conduct, but I felt quite independent for I had got used to go hungry. When we laid down, I told my partner that, as soon as it was daylight, we would leave this house and get breakfast and supper some way.

Sept. 1, 1856 -- As soon as it was daylight, we got up. I believe that they heard what I said. One of the women jumped up and let down blue milk and bread on the table. My partner took a little, but I felt determined not to eat at this house.

I wrote a few lines which read thus. "The strangers that you entertained last night is William Knox and Andrew Horn." Left the same upon the table and left at the break of day. Crossed the ridge and got breakfast at Brother J. G. Smiths.

Got home at dark. Back again to Great Salt Lake City, 5th Ward, and found my family all well, but they have had a hard time since I left to hunt up work.

Wed. Sept. 3 -- This day have started to work in the Public carpenter shop.

Wed. Oct 1, 1856 -- Commenced to work at Brigham Young's large stable, framing the roof. Royal Barney the boss.

Tues. 21st -- This night I shake something like the Auge.

Wed. 22nd -- This morning my head ached. I had hands laid uponme. My left big toe swelled. I could not go to work. It swelled. The nail had grown into the quick.

Thurs. 23rd -- I am better of my sickness, but my toe is worse.

Sat. 25th -- Worked this week 19 hours.

Nov. 1, 1856 -- Sat. No work this week. This day I have got a piece of nail out of my toe which caused the swelling and pain.

Sat. 8th -- I have worked two days at the stable and finished. I worked in all 24 hours.

Sat. 15th -- Working again for the Public Shops. I am working at Zediah Grant's house. I am not keeping my time. I had it all wrote with pencil but some of it I cannot make out.

Sun. 23 Nov, 1856 -- This day I have teached, or been a teacher, of the Sunday School in the 5th Ward.

Monday. 31st -- This night at eleven o'clock Zediah M. Grant died. He was Brigham Young's second counselor. He wore himself out preaching to the Saints.

Tue. Dec. 1, 1856 -- This morning, I went to work but the death of Jediah stopped us for I was at work at his house. I went into the house and beheld the man of God sleeping in the arms of death.

Sun. 30 Dec. -- This day, the last company of Handcarts came into the city from the United States, over the 1,000 miles to travel. There are several companies of the handcarts come in this season. They have suffered much, especially this last company. Hundreds have died, frozen and worn out. It was too late when they started.

The President, B. Young, did all that he could to save them by sending teams and provisions. He started himself, together

with H.C. Kimball and some more, but Brigham Young was taken with a severe sickness and had to return. Never-the-less, he did all that a man could do to relieve their suffering. I took into my house Hannah Haek and her two children. Likewise, Kathern Tarn. The condition was sorrowful to look at.

31 Dec. -- This morning I went to work. I saw Bishop Hunter. He is the presiding Bishop over the whole Church. I wanted to get some soap to wash and clean my sisters and make them comfortable. He told me that he wanted them to be sent to the country.

I told him that I had a young woman that I would like to step. He said, "Yes, Brother Knox, that's right". I could make a young woman comfortable better than I could Sister Hackey and her two children. But still, I would have divided to the last with them. But the council was to go to the country. This day, Sister Hannah Hackey and her two children left my house for Provo.

Mon. 22 Dec. -- Started for the Black Rock Salt Lake to replace and launch the Timely Gull, accompanied by Bro. H. T. Silcock, Darrell Johns. Worked five days - returned home on Sunday the 28th.

Tues. 30th -- Started for the Black Rock. Snowing.

Jan. 1, 1857 -- Working at the Timely Gull.

Sun. 11th -- This day, I left the Black Rock for home. Worked at the Timely Gull in all 18 days.

Sun. 18, Jan. 1857 -- This day I have taken Katheryn Tarn to be my second wife. Sealed by H.C. Kimball in the President's office. Brothers T.W. Winters and R. Davidson with us. We had a wedding dinner afterwards. Bro. T.W. Winters and his wife, Bro. Page and his wife, Bro. F. Cook, Bro. T. Davidson and his wife. We had a good time and felt well.

Mon. 2 Feb. -- This morning, I and Bro. H.T. Silcock commenced to build two small ferry boats.

Thurs. 5 Feb. - This is a Fast Day and we keep the same

Fri. 27 Feb. -- This day my wife, Kathryn, received her endowments. Sealed to me over the altar to be my wife for time and all eternity by President Brigham Young, Seer and Revelator, of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints.

Mar. 2 -- Took the boats into the paint shop.

Mar. 6. -- Worked at the school house, 5th Ward.

Mar. 7. -- Worked all day at the school house, 5th Ward.

Note: Some of the above dates were written out of order.

Sunday 8 Feb. -- I was rebaptized and family was rebaptized by F. Cook. My wife by Brother Page, My daughter, Dorothy by F. Cook, confirmed by T. Johnson, my wife, Elizabeth, by T. W. Winter. Kathryn and Dorothy by Page. This is a general rebaptism beginning with the First Presidency.

Wed. 11 Mar. 1857 -- My daughter, Elizabeth Jane, fell down in a fit. I was the cause of the same. I had a cock chicken. George Thackery found fault with it, so I cut off its head and threw it down on the ground, not thinking any harm. That scared her and down she fell. I felt very sorry for the same.

Fri. 20 Mar. -- This night Brother H.H. Felt was sent by H.C. Kimball to be the President of the circle meeting that meets every Friday night in the Endowment House. Brother Fife, he is going to the country.

Mar. 30 -- Worked all day at the 5th Ward school house.

Mar. 31 -- Commenced to calk the Boats.

Friday 3 Apr. -- This day, we have finished the boats. Made four oars. We worked 25 days each. We took them by the job for \$60.00. It was a bad job. We got \$10.00 cash more.

Sunday, April 5th -- The Sacrament was administered for the first time since last fall.

April 6th -- Conference - A good time. A great congregation, numbered at 5,250, about.

Apr. 9 -- Conference adjourned until the 6th of Oct.

Sunday 12 April -- This day I have teach Sunday School in the 5th Ward.

20 Apr. This day is spent in Military Duty.

21 -- This night I laid hands upon my wife, Katheryn. She was sick.

23 Apr. -- This morning a company of missionaries was in the Temple Block ready to start for the nations. They are going to start with hand carts to cross the plains. It was a great sight to see them start. I laid hands upon my wife, Katheryn, and she was healed.

2 May -- This day, I am teaching Sunday School.

Tues. 12th -- Made a water-gate and put it down in the 5th Ward.

June 7, Sunday -- Bro. Brigham Young gave it out to come next Sunday at 8 o'clock the next morning and they would read some of the stories that is published about us, as a people, in the United States.

Sunday, 14th of June -- The people crowded to the Bowery and heard the stories read. Everything was said against us but the truth. I never saw such a oneness among this people.

Tuesday, 16th of June -- Worked this week at the 5th Ward School House. Made the stand.

Tues. 23rd of June -- News has come that Parley P. Pratt was killed in the states.

Sat. 27 -- Meet in the 3rd Ward School Room for the purpose of organizing a new battalion. I made Capt. of 10. Hansen Wright my sargeant. I was to get my men that lived near to me that everything might move on quick and to get well disciplined to defend our rights in this mountain country against the United States.

Mon. 29 June -- Got me men together and drilled on practiced ourselves with our guns.

Tues. 30 June -- Bought a cow and heifer calf for \$40.00 from the Public.

Sat. 4 July, 1857 -- This day there is a general turnout on Military duty. All dressed in uniform as much as possible. I had a pair of white pants with a blue stripe up each side. My wife, Elizabeth, cut up a pair of lining sheets to make them. It was a good site.

July 5, 1857 -- This day I am 42 years of age.

July 6 -- This day I am going up to the Mill Creek Canyon to let out a bucket factory.

Sunday the 12th -- I went down to the mouth of this canyon and seen Bro. B. Ashworth and Sister Ashworth. Likewise, Bro & Sis. Dinsdale. Returned back again and held a meeting. Five in number, and agreed to have meeting every Tuesday and Thursday night to enjoy ourselves while in this lonely place.

July 24th -- Porter Rockwell came from the states in a very short time with important news. Brigham Young and counselors and a host of saints were celebrating the 24th of July up in Big Cottonwood Canyon. Porter landed in their midst and told them 25 hundred United States soldiers were started for Utah to wipe out the Mormons.

August 1857 -- During this month, we were busy engaged in Military duty. At one of our Military meetings, Major McCarthy, Capt. Andrew Cowen, Capt. of the 50 that I belong to and Adjutant D. Davidson. There was so many men to be sent out to catch the battalion to go out and face the enemy right straight.

McCarthy, Cowen and Davidson considered the matter over and concluded to call upon volunteers. The call was, "Who will volunteer to go?"

William Knox will go. Five nearly dropped over before another voice was heard. At length, some volunteered. It had the appearance of being pretty sharp times but I felt and meant what I said.

My superior officers, after seeing my willingness to go out and face the enemy, told me that I was not to go. Yet, I felt disappointed, but it was alright. I had their approval for doing my duty and, likewise, setting a fearless and good example before my men that I had charge over. This is a pretty good time to try men's hearts.

Sept. 13 -- Sunday meeting in the Bowery. During this meeting, H. C. Kimball called for volunteers to go. He would tell them where after they had volunteered. This was a very queer call at this time. We expected to have to fight every day with the soldiers. The number volunteered. I was amongst the first. I felt well to do anything to protect the Kingdom of God. I expected that this mission was to go and face the soldiers but it turned to go another direction. North to Blackfoot Fork on Snake River. 200 miles from this city.

Sept. 15 -- This territory Utah is under Marshall Law. Published and hand bills posted upon the walls at every corner. Likewise, sent out to the army by order of Brigham Young, Governor of Utah. This is a pretty bold stand to take and we mean to maintain the same.

Sept. 14 -- Held a meeting to arrange things for this Blackfoot Fork mission to make a new settlement and each to take two hundred pounds of flour, two bushels of wheat, two bushels of potatoes.

Sept. 21. Monday -- This day the State of Deseret, formerly Utah, under marshal law.

Sept. 22 -- Met again to arrange for this mission.

Sept. 25 -- This day the express has come into this Great Salt Lake City. That the soldiers paid no attention to Van Fleet, but the next day doubled their march. Tonight they are two hundred miles from us. Tonight is set for our boys to stamp and endeavor to throw the enemy camp into confusion.

Tonight I attended the prayer circle. Our boys are going out as fast as they can. There is no excitement in the city. Neither is there any sad faces. All appear cheerful. Van Fleet passed on to Washington to state the affairs in Deseret.

Sat. 26 -- More companies going out into the mountains.

Sun. 27th -- More companies going out. Br. H. C. Kimball said that they did not want to shed the blood of those soldiers, but take them and send them back again. But, next year, we may expect 50 to 100 thousand but, if we will do right, live our religion, the Lord will fight our battles.

Mon. 28th -- This morning, I am making ready to go upon this mission, taking 300 pounds of flour, two bushels of wheat, 5 bushels of potatoes and garden seeds and cooking utensils. News has come into Salt Lake City this morning that our men that was sent out to meet the enemy in the mountains, has not succeeded in stampeding their animals. The enemy has their forefoot hobbled with a lock and it is expected that they will be somewhere about Fort Bridger tonight. Tomorrow, a larger force will go out.

I am now upon the Public Square for a start to Blackfoot Fork. My wives, Elizabeth and Catherine, are with me to see me go off about 4 o'clock P.M. and travel about nine miles.

Sept 29 -- We have stopped at Farmington to inform President Andrew Cunningham of this mission. I have left my wives and children, which is five in number, with about half pound of bread stuffs for six months, and potatoes. We stopped all day.

Wed. Sept 30, 1857 -- We started, one yoke of oxen could not be found. We camped about one mile from Ogden.

Oct. 1, 1857 -- We started and came to Willow Creek and camped and got some wheat.

Oct 2 -- Got to Box Elder about noon. I was 155 pounds by the scales but in good health.

Oct. 3 -- I got out of the Mill three hundred pounds of flour, two bushels of wheat, five bushels of potatoes. We started but could not find three oxen. Left the Captain and six wagons behind. We camped five miles beyond Box Elder at John Morgans. He was not willing to accommodate us, but we agreed to stop our animals and did so. He manifested a very bad spirit, especially his wife. They were afraid we were going to destroy their corn, hay and wheat. I went in the house and remonstrated with him, but to no affect. I asked him to give us a little milk for our coffee, but I guarded the cattle off his hay. We did not destroy anything that we could help.

Sunday, Oct. 4 -- We camped on the north side of Bear River, 80 miles from Salt Lake City. After supper, the company sat around the fire and I stood up and told the camp that it was our privilege to worship God, sing, pray and preach. They agreed to the same. Charles Moulor was a president of a Quorum of Seventies. I prayed and he preached to us and Brother Workman. By this time, our Captain and the remainder of the company came up and we dismissed the meeting. The company got all safe across the river.

Oct. 5 -- This morning our Captain called upon to pray. After the same, he organized us into tens. Br. B.F. Pemelton, Captain of the first ten. Br. L. S. Conger captain of the second ten.

Mr. George Clawson, Captain of the guard. We started and camped for dinner about twelve miles at a spring for a short time, and then camped at Oregon Spring.

Oct. 6 -- Ice in the water bucket 1/16 inch thick. We started and came to Twin Creeks. Brother Conger was sick. I stood guard from ten to half past twelve. It rained pretty fast. Brother Workman picked up two five-gallon kegs in the creek, empty likewise a powder flask.

Oct. 7 -- Fair weather. We started and camped for dinner at a creek 8 miles south of the head of the Malad and camped at night at the big mountain spring at the head of the Malad. It rained all night. I lay under the wagon. The rain splashed upon my head. Bro. D. Casper is my bed-fellow.

Oct. 8 -- This morning, the mountains all around us were covered with snow. Looked very pretty. We camped down below the big mountain that is the dividing ridge that divides the water from the great basin and the Pacific Ocean. It is about 3 miles from the head of the Malad. We are camped in Bannock Valley. We have traveled about 18 miles.

Oct. 9 -- This is a good place to camp. Wood and water. We started from this place, there was ice $\frac{1}{4}$ inch thick. This is a very cold day -- a little hail. We have traveled about 18 miles and have camped along side of Bannock Creek. Sagebrush, but it is rather late. About 2 miles further, there is good feed.

Oct. 10 -- We started and traveled about 7 miles upon the Fort Hall road and then struck the Oregon Road in an easterly direction about 3 miles and camped for dinner at the Portneuf River. There is a bridge about 60 yards long across a high bank to go up. We met some Indians, friendly, gave them some bread and traveled and camped at Ross Fork.

Sunday 11 -- Last night it rained heavy. This morning, sleet. We started about nine o'clock, but it rained fast. We repaired the bridge across Ross Fork and got over all safe. We traveled north east. It rained for about one hour. We have come out of our way. Captain Cunningham and two men was on ahead looking for our location. We camped on Little Blackfoot, east north east we traveled. We camped behind Ross Butte. Toward night, it rained pretty heavy. A wet bed to lie down in.

Oct. 12. -- I stood watch this morning. Frosty, but clear. This place looks well. We started and traveled about four or five miles and camped upon the banks of Snake River. I commenced and fit up a plow.

Oct. 13 -- Finished the plow. Put hoops upon a five gallon key and cut it through and made two buckets of same. The Captain asked what I was going to do. Some was going to cut hay. Some one thing and some to another. I told him I would do what he wanted.

He told me to take some men and cut some poles to make a workshop. I did so.

Wrote a letter to my family. Four or five of our teams went back. I cut some wood for to make coal. Cut some dry grass to cover the same. A plow beam broke and I commenced another.

Oct. 14 -- Put a plow beam into the plow I set up the first day. The wood was bad and it broke, cottonwood. Made a frame for the blacksmith bellow. Cut three pieces of timber to make it. Harrow, cut sixteen pieces of timber to make a forge for the blacksmith. Some of the brethren is making a water ditch to bring the water upon the land. It is very dry. Some are plowing, some hauling wood.

Oct. 18 -- I built a forge, mended a plow, hued a piece of timber for a harrow. Twenty seven wagons from Great Salt Lake City passed for Salmon River. Charles Mour killed a cow for beef. Put a new handle into a plow. The ground is so hard, I commenced another plow. Some trading has been done with the Indians. They are camped with us this night.

Oct. 16 -- Lyman J. Blodget, our interpreter, traded with the Indians for four head of cattle. A wagon passed this Fort from Salmon River to go to Great Salt Lake City. I have mended a plow, hued a piece of timber for a harrow. I went and cut some wood for plows. This finished the day. Five loads of hay has come into our Fort, the first. The boys are still cutting hay.

Oct. 17 -- Made two plow handles, assisted the blacksmith. The wind began to blow after dinner from the North. We, the blacksmith and myself, had to quit work and look after the dinner utensils and almost everything that was movable was a flying with the wind.

We and Brother _____ secured the haystack. We are still living in the open air. The brethren came home from cutting hay. Two loads of hay was brought home. It began to rain and snow towards night and cleared up about nine o'clock. Had prayers and went to bed.

Sunday, Oct. 18 -- This morning is pleasant. I felt a little sick, but got over it after breakfast. Our Captain told us that after dinner we would have a meeting. We had so. He told us that there was too much story-telling. That telling yarns and using vulgarity, not that it was done out of devilment, but would tell a yarn and another would think of one and so on. He gave us good instruction.

Bro. L.A. Layney spoke a little bit on the same subject and I followed and Bro. Pemelton, our Captain, told us, as we had no watch on last night, he thought there was no danger, but, when he felt to set one, he would do so.

Oct. 19 -- I fit up a plow. A wolf came into the camp. He was shot. One came in during the night and stole a camp kettle with beef in it. The lid was found but the kettle is not.

Repaired two wagons, assisted the blacksmith, commenced with another plow. Nearly half our camp is working at the water ditch. The land cannot be plowed until irrigated. The plows will not bear it. Some of the hands is getting logs.

After supper, the boys, around the fire, had a dance. Charles Mower, the musician, without any musical instruments. His mouth and hands made the music and the wolves howling around the camp.

It is the custom to pray night and morning. I prayed and we went to bed.

Oct. 20 -- Two men from Salmon River bound for Salt Lake City. I wrote a letter to my family. Fixed up a plow, assisted the blacksmith. James and John Simmons, mountaineers, passed on the road for the north. Some work was done for them. I made a plow beam. I found the camp kettle that the wolf stole away. Some Indians are in the camp.

Oct 21 -- Fit up a bench for the blacksmith. Likewise, assisted him. Made three plow handles. Capt. Cunningham and George Goodman has gone up the Snake River. Some Indians are camped along side of us. The boys had a stag dance. John Jacobs, the moutaineer, stopped with us all night.

Oct. 22 -- I assisted the blacksmith all the forenoon. Hued a piece of timber and commenced to make a harrow. One of the Indians broke a half inch auger bit. He went and brought a good bridle to pay for the same. He said that he felt bad. I forgave him and gave him his bridle and told him that he was a Shoshone. He was pleased. We have traded for some fish.

Oct. 23 -- Finished the harrow. Our captain has returned and Goodman and brought a young bull.

Oct. 24 -- The captain and brother Pemelton went off this morning down to Ross Fork to hunt for iron. I have finished the new plow. Bro. Pemelton made the iron work and I made the wood work. Brother Joseph Romeney and Brother Battlson commenced to case the doors of the shanty. Capt. Cunningham and Brother Pemelton returned home about 10 o'clock P.M. and found no iron. Did not find the place.

Sunday, October 25 -- I went and looked at the water ditch. The water flowed over the land slowly

Mon. 26, Oct. -- Put three plows to right. Three of our brethren went to cut hay. Capt. Cunningham and Pembleton went off to hunt up iron. Brother James B. Cole and Brother Adaham Walker and Brother Isaac Norton came into camp about noon. They met our

Captain about two miles from camp with a letter from Brigham Young. They are from Willow Creek. They brought us news that our boys are hurting the soldiers in the mountains. They are sent out to bring three yoke of cattle that belong to Willow Creek. I have hued the inside of one of our houses. The brethren that went out to cut hay, returned by the captains orders home again. Did not cut any, but they informed us that they had cut half a load.

Oct. 27. -- Made a plow beam and handle. The upright pole broke and broke the wood. Two wagons passed for Salmon River. Our Capt. and Brother Pemelton returned to the Fort with a large breaking plow and some harrow teeth. I spent the remainder of the day hueing the inside of the houses. Our captain read the letter that was sent to him from Governor Young.

The soldiers was at Hams Fork. Seventy Six wagons have been consumed by our boys. Brother Brigham told Brother Dunningham and we are at liberty to come home - to run no danger. Our Captain told us that it would be best to get our grain into the ground, and we traded some of our flour and potatoes to the Indians. Brother Jessie Laney has sowed about 3 and a half acres. This is the first wheat that has been put into the ground.

Oct. 28 -- I fit up a plow and assisted the blacksmith and repaired another plow. Brother David W. Gamble left this morning with three yoke of cattle and wagon. Brother Cole, likewise. A beef was killed. Bro. G. Workman and myself get about 40 pounds each.

Oct. 29 -- Repaired a plow. George Clawson and George Goodman started off this morning to look after the soldiers. I washed a shirt and garment. The plow will not stand the work. The work is nearly laid in.

Tonight we are going to cache our flour and wheat and potatoes, about 8 P.M. when the Indians are in their wickups for messes. Brother C. Workman Boss the job

Commenced digging on the bank in the road that crosses the Snake River to Salmon River. I there deposited two hundred pounds of flour, two pecks of onions, twenty five pounds of fine salt. There was put in twenty hundred pounds of flour, 1 bushel of onions, 1 hundred pounds of salt, 1 peck of peas.

The moon shined bright. We finished this cache about a quarter past eleven o'clock P.M.

Oct. 30 -- I fixed a plow and planted 20 peach stones, sowed some onion seed, likewise beets, parsnips on the south side of the plowed land. Three plows is at work, but most of the boys is a fishing. Work is laid in except plowing, harrowing and sowing. I salted the beef that Brother Workman and myself got.

Nov. 11 -- This morning the wind and cold almost unsufferable. We started and the weather abated a little until we began to draw near Farmington. The wind and cold commenced again, more fierce than before. Brother A.R. Williams in Farmington gave us his house and entertained very kindly. We have come 22 miles. The wagon cover is split all to pieces.

Nov. 12 -- This is a fine morning. We started and came to this Great Salt Lake City. I got home about 5 o'clock P.M. and found my family all in good spirits. We have traveled 18 miles. The distance, according to my calculations on this new route, is 193 miles from Black Foot Fork Snake River to Great Salt Lake.

Nov. 13 -- This day I brought home about 80 pounds of beef, part of a young steer we took for our winter's food at Fort Lookout.

Nov. 16 -- This day I have commenced to work in the public work shop.

Nov. 21 -- Worked in the carpenter shop 49 hours.

Nov. 28 -- Worked all week in the public shop.

Nov. 29, February -- Two letters was read in the tabernacle from Brother Wells, the Chief Commander, or General, of the Nauvoo Legion that are in the mountains in Echo Canyon guarding and watching the movements of our enemies that have gone back to Bridger.

Likewise, a proclamation from our enemy camp from the Governor that the President of the United States has sent. His name is Cummings.

I suppose that there is over 1900 soldiers and teamsters, at this time, in the country of Green River. The prayers of this people has been answered.

President Young told us that he didn't want to shed the blood of our enemies, but if we would live our religion, the Lord would fight our battles. He has. Thus far, their mules and oxen have died by the hundreds and they are now where they cannot get back or forward. They have sent to New Mexico to get mules.

Dec. 4 -- and Thursday the 3rd of December -- This morning up to Saturday, our men that was in the mountains have begun to come home again on Tuesday and Wednesday. Thursday being the day to fast and pray. I attended the fast meeting. We take that amount that we would take that amount that we would eat to the meeting.

Friday I worked for Brother Joseph Young 25 hours. I got one dollars worth of beef and a load of straw. The rest I worked for the Public.

14 miles. Here our Captain and the brethren went out to hunt the horse. Returned. They found the same.

Nov. 6 -- Snowed all night. We started. Snowed so that it was difficult to find the trail. We came to Spring Creek at the foot of the divide. Dimishes in going up the divide. We passed over the divide. Snowing heavy so that we could not go far. We have traveled about 18 miles and camped at the head of one Twin Creek. It snows while I write.

Nov. 7 -- This morning is clear and frosty. William F. McGraw carriage, one of the carriages is the other side of the Jordan. It is sold at public auction. Capt. Cunningham, auctioneer. Sold for one hundred ninety dollars. The gig or sulky, twenty six dollars. George Clawson bought, the other side Jordan. Richard Gile bought the sulky, to be paid in produce at tithing price. The Captain and horse team left us the ox team.

We camped at Oregon Springs, Malad Valley. Twenty four or twenty five miles we have traveled this day. We got into Brother Forgham's house and we cooked and slept.

Nov. 8 -- We started and called at the Fort and had a little conversation with Brother Thomas Dale that I baptized eight years ago (in England)

About 3 o'clock P.M., the wind from the south and snow right in our face. We crossed Bear River and camped at a house four miles south of Bear River. We traveled 23 miles. A very coarse night.

We had not been long in the house until a woman and two boys with an ox team, bound for Cache Valley, came by. About the middle of the night, the woman rose up and cried, "Fire". Alarmed us a little. It burned her wagon cover a little. We were all strained all over because one of her boys got his hand burned.

Nov. 9 -- Snowed until noon. We passed through Box Elder. The drum was beating. The men was mustering to get to Echo Canyon. At six P.M. we camped at Banks Head betwixt Box Elder and Willow Creek. We have traveled about twenty miles.

Nov. 10 -- We started and brought a boy that was sick to take him to the city. I went on according to the captain's request, to find feed for the cattle. We came to Ogden. Bishop C. West gave us plenty of food, a corral and fire wood and a house to stop in.

This night, the wind from the east blew a perfect gale, and tremendous cold. I found Sister Mason and had a little conversation. Although the night was bitter cold, yet Bishop C. West was mustering the force of men to go and face the enemy. We traveled about fifteen miles.

Oct. 31 -- This afternoon I plowed with three mules and one horse. About 8 P.M. I started to cache about 18 bushels of wheat. About one quarter of a mile, 31 yards from camp, east. Mr. George Clawson and George Goodman returned to camp. We have cached 4400 pounds of flour.

Nov. 1, 1857 -- The teams busily engaged. About 8 o'clock P.M. we cached our potatoes, about two hundred yards from the camp, east, about 15 yards from the bank edge in a sand ridge.

Nov. 2 -- This morning we had a public sale in camp. Captain Cunningham auctioned a roan mare that was bought into camp that had been running without any owner. Charles Maur bought him for \$188 to be paid in produce at tithing prices. Likewise, the young bull. Peter Christensen bought the bull 13½ dollars. This is to be divided among all hands. Thirty one is the number. We started from this Fort this morning, the 2nd of November, and camped at Ross Fork twelve miles from the Fort and left one one harrowing the wheat that is about twenty acres.

Nov. 3 -- This morning, two of our boys returned from Warm Spring Valley about 2 o'clock A.M. with a fine spring carriage and two wheels, a new fine gig wheels. The boys found the same. George Clawson and George Goodwin when they were out looking for the soldiers. George Thatcher and George Clawson went off yesterday and returned this morning with the carriage and gig wheels.

We started, but the mare that Charles Moeller had, could not be found. He let her loose the night previous, amongst the rest of the stock. Charles Moeller and Lyman Brodged stayed behind but could not find the same. They returned wet through. About 1 o'clock, it commenced to rain. We have come about 15 miles and camped off the Portnuf. Taking new route.

Nov. 4 -- Rained all night. Cleared up about 8 o'clock A.M. About nine A.M. and traveled up the Portnuf. There is a great many falls not exceeding two feet and a great many bear tracks were seen. We traveled about 12 miles and camped. We left four horses teamed. Capt. Cunningham and Brother Sanders and Brother Larson went back to hunt up the horse that was lost the day before.

There is plenty of good farming land up this Portnuf. Abundance of fine grass, timber plenty in the mountains, chiefly cedar. Here is a range of mountains north and south. We are about west of them. Where we are camped this night, they are about four miles ahead. Plenty of pine and fur. The Portnuf takes a sharp turn south directly at this place at the north side of Portnuf. A range of mountains full of iron ore ranging up the river.

Nov. 5 -- Snowing. We crossed the river and went north about a mile. Went down a bank and struck south. Came to a warm spring 8 miles from where we started and traveled up Swamp Creek, the west side of the same. We camped at a quaking asp grove about

Sat. 5th -- This night General Wells and the staff officers came home. They have left a few of the brothers out to watch the movements of our enemy which is reported 2500 in number with the governor and several officers.

Sun. 6th of Dec. -- I attended the tabernacle all day.

Mon. 7th -- This morning I went to General Wells to ask about some clothing but did not succeed. At this time, calico and all kinds of clothing is hard to get.

The Gentiles have all cleared out of these mountains. We are, as a people, are recommended to manufacture our own clothing and everything we need. We have come to the time when there is no intercourse between us and the states.

I attended a block meeting. There is some trains of guards at Green River, but our enemy has stopped them from coming into this Great Salt Lake City. I have started to shingle Charles H. It is very cold.

Tuesday 8th -- Working at the same. At 7 P.M., I attended a military meeting at the Third Ward School for the captains of 10 to look after their men.

Wed. -- At the same work.

Thurs. -- Went to Brother J. McCallester's house to work. I and my wife, Kathryn attended the Ward meeting.

Fri. 10th -- Working at the same. This morning, about 6 o'clock A.M., my daughter, Elizabeth Jane Knox, had a fit, but it didn't last long. I did not go to work after dinner. I and my wife, Catherine, attended our block meeting.

Sat. 12th -- Worked at the same and finished the roof and left. This week I have worked 25 hours for C.H. and 22 hours for J. McCallister, all for the public.

Sun. 13th -- I attended the tabernacle. Brother Spencer and H.C. Kimball preached. He said that we were a good people but there was plenty of room to improve.

Mon. 14th -- Worked in the Public Shop. At night attended a block meeting in Brother Thatcher's.

Tuesday 15th -- After work, I went and notified the ten men that I am Captain over. Hensen Wright is my sargeant. I notified him, but he said, "Dam the meetings." He was not going to run after them. I did not feel good at this because it is his duty to notify the ten at my call. I had to go around to the ten myself. I did not take any notice of the same at the time, but did afterwards considerable.

Wed. 16th of Dec. -- Commenced to make corn bin about 60 feet long. After work, I met in the Fifth Ward School Room with my ten to get an account of all the time upon guard over the prisoners. Likewise, the time upon the road or in the mountains guarding this people. Watching the soldiers, like the account of guns, ammunition, horse, oxen, wagons, and everything that belongs to a company. Likewise, to ascertain whether we would have a Christmas Party in the Metelyon party. To this, we could not agree, but there is two tens in this Ward that we would join and have one in the Ward.

Dec. 17th -- After work, I attended the Ward meeting.

Dec. 18th -- After work, I attended a block meeting in Br. Sharples. It was there agreed to have military party to come on Christmas Eve. Wm Knox, Capt. of ten, Br. Frederick Cook, Capt. of Ten, to invite all the Ward myself. Br. Cook and Br. A. Cown, the Captain of our 50 committee.

Sat. 19th -- This week, I have worked 51 hours Public. After the same, I attended my Seventy Quorum Meeting held at Br. N. Campbell's house.

President J. Pack got up a party to invite the Presidency of the Seventies and the First Presidency to be at the Globe A Diner, to cost 75¢ each, or to be paid in cash or good store pay. I could not go for cash is bad to get. In fact, there is very little in this place and stores is almost out of goods.

To be a dance in the Seventy Hall on Saturday 1st. Today, I paid \$6.00 for my hear's paper, the Deseret News.

Sun. 20 -- This morning I am at home. Br. J. Clemens and T. Johnston, teachers, visited me.

On Monday last, Bro. J. Page told me that Br. Arnson Fieldon blamed me, or my wives, for killing Sister Fry's cock and throwing him into the ditch on Tuesday last. I took Mr. Martin for a witness. He said that he did not see any body. It was so dark, but he saw the cock come into the ditch after Sunday night meeting.

This was tried before the Bishop Winter and Counselors and Teachers. The teachers tried to settle it, but could not do it. Fieldon contradicted himself so much.

This Sister Fry is Bishop Thomas Winter's mother. At this trial, Fieldon contradicted himself.

The Bishop winded it up this way. The blame was let to fall upon Fieldon by Sister Fry so to clear Fieldon, his wife. Sister Fieldon blamed Knox or his wife. The Bishop smoothed it off by them asking my forgiveness and kept as secret as possible.

Monday the 21st -- After work, I attended a block meeting in Br. Thatcher's.

Tuesday the 22nd -- After work, I went to see Br. Hensen Wright, my Sargeant. I asked him if he saw the last time that I was here when I told him about the military meeting... if he said, "Dam the meetings", that he was not going to run after the men.

He said that he did not say "dam", but "darn". I told him that Br. Page and myself was fussing about several things. I said to Page, "I don't know what is the matter with Br. Wright."

I went to notify him to attend a meeting and he said to me, "Dam the meetings." He was not going to run after the men. If they wanted anything, to come to him.

Page is the Bishop's first counselor. He went and told the Bishop and he preached about it and I was bawled out for it publicly.

Wed. 23rd -- After work, at the Public, I met Capt. Cown, the Captain of the Fifty that I belong to the Adjutant Davison, Capt. Cook of the first ten, myself Capt ain of the third ten. We, the committee, to arrange for a party called the "Soldier's Party." We sent to buy two quarts of whiskey to treat the musicians and so forth - one peck of wheat.

Thurs. 24th -- I stopped work at twelve o'clock, and about five o'clock P.M., the dancing party began. Betwixt six and seven, the music commenced and dancing about eleven o'clock. Got supper at Capt. Cowns. Broke up about four o'clock A.M. It went off first rate.

Fri. 25th -- Christmas Day.

Sat. 26th -- This day I cut some wood for the fire at home.

Sun. 27th -- I attended the tabernacle all day and attended the Ward meeting. The first of the proceedings was the Bishop wanted me to make a public confession for telling Br. Page what Br. Wright had said. I got up and asked forgiveness of the congregation. At the same time, I told them it was not a public offense.

I got vexed to think how that the Bishop could smooth Br. Fieldon case over that was public, or more public, than mine because his mother was at the foundation of the same. I was much disturbed with the proceedings.

Mon. 28th -- After work, Capt. Cown told me that Adjutant Davison had a schedule for me to fill up the men's time of guard and service, mustering, and the time and date of all they had done since the 29th of Sept. 1857.

I went upon my session on the 28th of Sept, 1857 to Black Foot Fork. Br. William Morrison was made Capt. of the third ten in

my place. I am not well-posted up in these things, not being at home or in the midst of the soldiers. I was in a different field of labor.

I went to Adjutant Davison and got the schedule and went to Br. Henson Wright, my Sargeant. He went away to try to find out the necessary requirements. I stopped in Br. Wrights house at a meeting and enjoyed myself.

Tues. 29th -- After work, I went to Br. Wright's house to get the schedule squared up. Him and myself went to Adjutant Davison's and there we found Capt. Cown and Capt. Cook. We got squared up and left.

Wed. 30th -- I went to the tithing office to find out I stand in the books. I am about clear.

Thurs. 31st -- I have recorded what I have made during the last year. It is some way about four hundred and sixty four dollars, making a little over forty six dollars for tithing.

Fri. January 1st, 1858 -- I am at home.

Sat. 2nd -- Went to work at the Public, $8\frac{1}{2}$ hours. I intend to keep my time and where I attended my Quorum meetings held in Br. R. Campbell's house. Br. John Peck Senior, President of the Eighth Quorum of Seventies.

Sun. 3rd -- I attended Tabernacle. After the same, I went to the Ward Meeting, at the close of the same, Counselor Page asked me if I had anything to say. I did not know. I thought about last Sunday. I stood up and made all right.

Mon. 4th -- Working at the Public. After the same, I attended a block meeting at Br. Fieldings.

Tues. 5th -- Working at the Public. About 7 o'clock P.M., Br. Thomas Davidson, Adjutant to Br. Andrew Cown, Capt. of the second fifty, came to my home. Had another schedule - more improved than the last two. We went to Br. Henson Wright's, my Sargeant, Did the business. Had a drink of buttermilk and left.

Wed. 6th -- Working in the tithing office repairing bins, and after the same, myself and family, went to a dancing party in this Ward. Came home about ten P.M. Paid one peck of wheat for the same.

Thurs. 7th -- Fast Day. We attended the Ward Meeting. Br. G.D. Ross preached considerable to us.

Fri. 8th -- Working at the Tithing Office. Worked in the shop at B. Young's barn doors - $16\frac{1}{2}$ hours and 26 hours making wheat bins in the tithing office. In all, $42\frac{1}{2}$ hours.

Monday 11th -- Br. Ebenzer Gilles was at my house at supper.
(Bro. Gilles is a friend from Sunderland, England)

Thurs. Jan. 14th, 1858 -- After work, I attended the Ward meeting.

Jan. 15th -- After work, I attended a block meeting.

Jan. 16 -- Worked all week in the tithing office making wheat bins. Worked 47 hours. At one o'clock P.M., I went to a mass meeting held in the Tabernacle. The house was crowded.

Ballow's Brass Band played up the music. Bishop Smoot presided over the meeting. The business was opened to the President and Senate of the United States for our rights as American Citizens and to call the Army off our borders in June or we will destroy them. We will fight for our rights.

Jan. 17 -- My wife, Elisabeth, and myself, attended the Tabernacle.

Jan. 18 -- After work, I attended a block meeting in Br. F. Cook's house.

Jan. 19 -- After work, I attended a meeting held in the Tabernacle at half past 5 P.M. Bro. Brigham Young addressed the meeting, and others, on home manufacturing, the necessity of same. Likewise, to have a circulating medium and that to be paper money. Put to a vote and carried. Likewise, a standing army of one thousand strong to be kept by Wards.

Jan. 21 -- After work, attended the Ward meeting.

Fri. 22 -- Worked for hour and a half in the shop. After work I attended a block meeting.

Sat. 23 -- Worked 50 hours and $1\frac{1}{2}$ hours in the shop all this week. 50 and $\frac{1}{2}$ hours making bins in the tithing office and $1\frac{1}{2}$ hours shop, in all 52 hours

Sun. 24th -- Attended Tabernacle. Elder Benson, one of the twelve spoke. Just returned from Europe.

The spirit of the times is to exterminate the Latter Day Saints. Soldiers are coming round by California.

Elder O. Pratt spoke in the afternoon. He has just come from Europe. He said that he would like to stop at home for a few years for the most of his time has been preaching to the nations of the earth. He thought that they had been warned enough.

Br. H.C. Kimball, sitting behind Br. Orson, said, "Perhaps you will stop one year." He, Br. Orson, proved from the prophecies of the Bible, Book of Mormon and Doctrine and Covenants, that the predictions are fast fulfilling. I attended the Ward meeting. A vote was taken in regards to the paper currency. A clear vote.

Jan. 25 -- After work, I attended a block meeting and, according to the request of the Bishop of the Fifth Ward of Great Salt Lake City, I gave in the following: four bushels of wheat, three hundred pounds of flour, twenty bushels of potatoes, three single blankets, one quilt, one counter pan, two old sheets, one buffalo robe, one cow, one calf.

Six in family. This is to find out who can assist and what they can do in fitting out one thousand men with two horses, one to ride and one to pack, each with everything necessary for a campaign.

Jan. 28th -- After work, I attended the Ward meeting.

Jan. 29th -- A meeting was to be in my house, but the Danish Brethren had a dancing party in the Ward School house - no meeting.

Jan. 30th -- I attended the Tabernacle and the Ward meeting.

Monday, 1 Feb., 1858 -- After work, I attended a block meeting.

Tue. 2nd -- At work.

Thurs. 4th -- I attended the Fast Meeting.

Fri. 5th -- After work, I attended a prayer meeting in my house.

Sat. 6th -- Worked at a wheat bin or frame house, 44 hours and a half. Attended Ward meeting, to collect means to fitout eleven hundred soldiers.

This fifth Ward had four men to fitout, armed and equipped with two horses for each man. Bishop Thomas Winter got it reduced to one man, the Ward being so poor.

I gave a young heifer with twelve dollars and three hundred pounds of flour which cost me 18 dollars. In all, 30 dollars.

Sun. 7th -- Attended Tabernacle all day. Ward meeting at night.

Thurs. 11th -- After work, I attended the Ward meeting. The Bishop has a letter sent to him for to fitout three men - five is set down to this Ward. The Bishop considered that the Public hands was best off. He laid thirty to me to pay while he, himself, has a span of horses, three cows and a calf. I just can give a calf.

Friday 12th -- A prayer meeting in my house.

Sat. 13 -- Worked 54 hours at Public.

Sun. 14 -- Attended Tabernacle and ward meeting.

Mon. 15th -- After work, I attended a meeting in Br. Thackries.

Thurs. 18th -- After work I attended the Ward meeting.

Fri. 19th -- After work I attended a meeting in Br. Sharples.

Sat. 20th -- Worked 57 hours at Public. Rain fell all day.

Sun. 21st -- Home all day. Attended the Ward meeting. The Bishop Thomas Winter said that it was time for to make the fencing right and for to take care of their cows and oxen and chickens to pen them up. Br. Knox has some and, if they come upon my wheat, I will shoot them. He said that he was determined to shoot the chickens that comes upon his wheat. I did not appreciate the meeting at all. The meetings in this ward are not pleasant.

After meeting, I returned home and consulted with my wives what to do with the chickens, to pen them up at this time of the year and other peoples at large, they would cost more than they were worth. Besides, if they should happen to get upon the Bishop's wheat and get shot, then I should not like that for he has let his horses run in my lot almost all winter and they have trampled the ground considerable and eaten my cow and calf feed.

I told him about it, but in vain. Now, here is two evils. I thought to take the least, that is to kill all the chickens. So, after I had discussed this subject in my own mind, I went out and cut the heads off eleven chickens, seven hens and four cocks. This is the second time I have kill off my chickens to keep from mischief and, at the same time, all around me keep them.

Thurs. 25 -- This day Dr. Cain has come from Washington in 46 days by way of California. Attended ward meeting.

Fri. 26 -- After work, I went round my ten, which I am Captain over, to collect two pounds of flour from each to pay a debt, or what was borrowed to send out to the boys in the mountains. A prayer meeting in my house.

Sat. 27 -- Worked all week at the Public. Worked $56\frac{1}{4}$ hours, after the same, I attended my quorum meeting.

Sun. 28th -- This morning my daughter, Dorothy, went to the Tabernacle. We were there almost an hour before the time, and the house was crowded. Had to stand. Dorothy fainted. I carried her out and came home.

Mar 1 -- Monday

Thurs 4th -- Fast Day. The Bishop acknowledged that he had been too sever, but he intended to do better.

Sat. 6th -- Worked all week at Public. $49\frac{1}{2}$ hours.

Sun. 7th -- I attended Tabernacle all Day. Br. Heber gave notice for the Blackfoot Mission to be ready. I am one of of them. I attended the ward meeting.

Mon. 8th -- I stopped from work to get things ready that I might be ready when called upon to go upon my mission. I went up to the Public shop and made two hoe handles and a rake handle. Bought a box from George Romeny for one dollar to take with me upon my mission with repair.

The news came by express from Salmon River that the Indians had killed and wounded several of our brethren and drove off their cattle and horses.

I met brother Andrew Cunningham, the Captain of our mission. He was sent to bring the Salmon River mission home. He is taking a company with him. I asked him if our mission would be stopped. He said yes, Blackfoot Fork is just half way to Salmon River. It appears that the gentiles is striving to influence the Indians against us. Col. Kane went out to the soldiers at Hams Fork or Bridger. President Brigham Young sent out a guard with him. What his mission is, I don't know.

Tues. 9th -- Stayed at home cutting firewood. A company of foot men went out. Reports that our batteries and places of defense are not safe. The soldiers at Bridger are trying to influence the Indians against us.

Fri. 12th -- This morning between one and two o'clock, our cow calved. A bull calf.

Mon. 8th -- I brought 12 young apple trees from T. Winter. I have given him one bushel of wheat and one and a half dollars per bushel - half of the pay. Planted same.

Sat. 13th -- This is a very corse morning, snowing and blowing all day. I stayed at home - went to the ward meeting. Very corse, snowing. My wife, Elisabeth, was in labor. I delivered her by the assistance of my Heavenly Father. We, my wife Catherine and myself, knelt down and prayed and I arose and laid hands upon her and, by the Spirit of God, blessed her. Felt well in doing so. The child was born ten or fifteen minutes after. All right. About 10 o'clock P.M., a son. His name is William Knox. Last of all, the donations is come of to three dollars to fitout the brethren that is the starting Army.

Mon. 15th, March -- This is a very corse morning, snowing, drifting and very cold. It is so very corse that I have stayed at home to assist. Amos Fielding's wife brought weights and weighed young William. He is about $8\frac{1}{2}$ pounds. He looks well.

Tues. 16th -- At home. Still very corse.

Wed. 17th -- Went to work.

Thurs. 18th -- This morning at seven o'clock, a company of horsemen started for the West. The Indians is stealing the cattle, Capt. Hooper herd.

Sat. 20th -- Worked forth hours at the Public. I was requested by Capt. Andrew Cown to collect one dollar from my ten. I got a bill from the Governor's Office and gave the same to Capt. A. Cown. I attended the quorum meeting. Very corse week.

Sun. 21st -- March, 1858 -- This morning attended the Tabernacle. Bro. Wilford Woodruff spoke a short time introducing what was about to be revealed unto us.

This is called by Bro. B. Young "a general conference today". Br. Brigham Young arose and told the whole story that this Church has been led by the Spirit of God and is now, and it is better for us to fly to the Desert than one good elder to fall by our enemy for they are determined on our destruction on this desert lies south west from Great Salt Lake City. To send the poor and they that have not been drove before. The balance to stop and wreck the crops and burn all up. Then the soldiers can come.

Mon. 22nd -- The people are busy running two and fro hunting up what they want converted to cash. Up to the Temple, the the Carpenter's Shop making boxes, mending wagons, making preparations for the move South and put in a crop previous to going into the Desert.

Tue. 23rd -- I attended a prayer meeting in the ward.

Snowing fast on the 25th. On the 25th after work, I attended the ward meeting.

Sat. 27th -- This week has been pretty busy for the most of the people is making preparations to leave this city and all north to fly to the south on Thursday morning. All the men's time was taken - no more booking. I have worked this week out of the Public, sixty hours. Attended my quorum meeting.

Sun. 28th -- I attended Tabernacle this fornoon. The council for the Bishops to send the people off as fast as they are ready. The Public hands to work as long as they are wanted and they will be helped away. The standing army is broke up. The Nauvoo Legion is in force again, of which I am a Captain of ten men. The new organization of the Nauvoo Legion.

Mon. 24th -- Making packing boxes for flour and wheat.

Thurs. 1 April, 1858 -- This day I received 48 dollars and 40 cents for my labor. The books are squared up. Last week I got a due bill of \$7.50 only good on the Public to draw what there is. During this week, a fresh guard went into the mountain.

Wed. 31 March -- After work I attended a battalion meeting in the 3rd Ward School Room selecting the men to go into the mountains to guard. Four of my men to go tomorrow morning.

Apr. 1 -- I payed a tax to J.C. Little, \$1.00 Bought a hand cart from Br. D. Davison for ten dollars but I have rued the bargain not worth the money.

Friday 2 -- I have given Davidson two dollars rue bargain.

Sat. 3 -- Worked 59 hours. Got a due bill of \$14.75. The people are leaving for the south.

Sun. 4

Tues. 6 -- This is conference day, but we were requested to work. A call was for the Nauvoo Legion to turn out and be examined. We went to work 2½ hours, but called to turn out. We did so and the Legion met in the Tabernacle. Brigham Young preached to us about one o'clock. We dismissed and the fire arms was examined. More men was called to go into the mountains. Seven men is out of my ten. I gave my musket to Br. John Martin, my powder horn is also. The Public hands is not allowed to go - so much work making boxes. The people is still moving south.

Fri. 9th April, 1858 -- This night my wife, Catheryn, was delivered of a son. His name is John Knox. I attended her myself. He was born about half past eleven o'clock. All right. He weighed 9 pounds.

Sat. 10th -- I went to work. Worked 52 hours and got a due bill - \$12.12½.

Sun. 11th -- Went to the Tabernacle. H.C. Kimball told us that this move was a very important one. The time would come for us to go to Jackson County. The Blackfoot Mission was called to meet at the North East end of the Tabernacle at the close of the meeting. We did so, by Capt. Cunningham. We left two hundred pounds each of flour, two bushels of wheat, five of potatoes and we got sacks back. I got mine this day. The Indians north is very hostile.

Mond. 12 -- Governor Cummings and Col. Thomas L. Kane came into this city. After, they were escorted from Davis County by the Mayor, Marshall Alderman, and many other distinguished citizens.

Sat. 17th -- Worked all this week excepting 2 hours, making 48 hours. This has been very corse this week. The people still moving south.

Sun. 18th -- The people are still urged to move on south.

Mon. 19th -- The people are still moving. We, the carpenters, are making boxes for the flour and wheat to take to Provo. The fruit trees are full of blossoms, apparently to be plenty of peaches.

Sat. 24th -- Five of our carpenters from the Public Shop went off to Provo to make preparations for the wheat. All this week, I have worked 60 hours.

Sun. 25th -- I went to the Tabernacle. President Brigham Young commenced to speak. He spoke about five minutes and went into the vestry and brought out into the stand Governor A. Cummings and Col. Thomas L. Kane. Governor Young introduced Governor A. Cummings to a very large congregation. The people would not receive him. He said that he understood that there were a great many of this people that wish to live and have not the privilege or constrained unconstitutionally. He had come to set them free. He wanted an expression of the people.

Br. Clements spoke about half hour claiming our rights as American citizens. Elder John Taylor spoke of the abuses that this people have received from the United States.

All that wanted to go back rose their hands - some four or five raised their hands. Br. Wm. Knox raised his hand. He was baptized, along with me, in the river were Feilthon. He spoke afterwards, but he seemed to be on the background.

Brother Brigham seemed so composed all the time. All the dissatisfied had the privilege to call upon A. Cummings and the spirit of the meeting was for A. Cummings to use his influence to withdraw the soldiers from this territory and Brigham Young our leader temporally and spiritually.

Wed. 28th -- This day I was called to go into the mountains to take charge of a company to guard Echo Canyon. I was stopped by Squire Wells. None of the Public Hands is allowed to leave their work. We are still making boxes for flour and wheat. This city had a fine show for apples and peaches.

Sat. May 1, 1858 -- Worked six days, 60 hours, at the Public. The due bills is stopped. The time is taken to the office again.

Sun. 2 May -- I attended the Tabernacle. Brigham and Heber have left this city. The people is still urged to go on to the south. Some horses that the Indians stole from Grantsville are brought back by Sen. Simmons to this city. The owners to come and take them. This night my sons, William and John Knox, was blessed. Bishop I. Winter blessed William, Ames Felden blessed John Knox.

Sat. 8th -- During this week, the people is still going south. Worked at the Public, 60 hours. Still making boxes.

Sun. 9th -- I attended the Tabernacle. Br. George A. Smith preached. His subject was the necessity of keeping the words of

wisdom and the origin of the one-wife system and the evils resulting therefrom. He said that one-wife system originated first in Rome with a band of pirates, or robbers, who landed at Rome and could only get one woman to one man, thereby they made them queens. Sometime after, more women came and they were made prostitutes.

Br. Brigham Young preached the after part of the day. He said that, when Col. Kane came and asked him if he was aware what he was about with this people, he said "yes". Did he know that the whole Christian world was against him and how is it the rest of the territories and states are taking short steps but you're taking great strides.

Brigham said the devils forced us to it. He said that is necessary for us to git, at this time, a close together, seeing that the Indians are hostile and made so by our enemies. It will soon be known in a few months what the results will be. We will not stop long in Utah Valley. We will either go further, or return back to our homes again, but if it is necessary, at this time, to leave our homes and go south said he. I will not leave the poor behind. My teams shall go until every one of the poor and everything that they have, are removed. Truly, he caused my heart to rejoice and every honest soul that heard him.

I went to the Ward Meeting. Bishop T. Winter said that there was some teams coming tomorrow to take out of this ward. One was for Br. Knox. I told him that the Presiding Bishop, Bishop Hunter, told me that I was to have two wagons, I being one of the Public hands.

May 10 -- This morning, I commenced to take preparations to send my family off. I went up and asked Bishop Hunter which was the best place for me to send my family for they were going away today. He said that there was no teams in to go. I told him that Bishop T. Winter told me, so he laughed and said that he did not tell him. He asked me where I should like to send my family. I said that Lehi was nearest. He said that he was going to Provo and he would call at Lehi and send teams for me.

Tues. 11 -- I went to work just about twelve o'clock. My wife, Catherin, came for me to go for Bishop Hunter and sent teams for me to go to Lehi. Bishop T. Winter left this ward on Monday last for Provo. Left Amos Fielden in charge of the ward. I told Amos Fielden that, when the teams come, not to let Bro. Knox have two wagons, to make his wives and children walk.

Now, this is in his good feelings that he has to try to make two women, that has so lately been confined, and both sickly, to walk thirty two miles and carry their infants in their arms, besides three children. But, the Lord be thanked. I had a better friend at the helm, for Bishop Hunter sent me two wagons that my family could ride comfortably, and likewise, carry a young calf in the wagon.

I left this Great Salt Lake City, May 11, 1858, with two wives, and five children, Elisabeth Tweddele, my first, her maiden name, with her four children -- Dorothy Knox, Elisabeth Jane Knox, Mary Ann Knox, infant William Knox Junior ---- Catherine Tarn, my second wife, maiden name, with her infant child, John Knox. One cow, one heifer, one calf, about three hundred lbs. of flour, five bushels of wheat, four chests, wash tube, pail, cooking utensils, two bed steds, bedding, two chairs, four small benches, one twenty-four hour clock.

We traveled about five miles and camped. I made up a bed under a wagon in the open air for my two wives and their infant children and I made up another bed along side of them for myself and three children. The weather was pretty fine. We lay comfortable.

Started early in the morning and got to Lehi in good time. I met Bishop Hunter on the way. He told me to tell the Bishop Lehi that I was one of the regular Public Hands and to try to get my family under cover when we got there.

I told the Bishop of Lehi what Bishop Hunter had said. He went away directly and found a place for my family. All went off well. This is Wed. night the 12th of May.

May 13 -- This day, I have put my cow and heifer into a herd. I was going to return back, but the Bishop of this place told me to stop and make my family comfortable as I could. I did so. The house that I got my family into was one where a brother was apostising and going back. There is a great many apostising.

Sat. 15th -- I left my wives and children in Lehi, Utah County, and returned back to Salt Lake City. Got sat back. When I came to the house, there was our cat sitting mewing. I took her into the house and fed her. I felt sorry for her. Dorothy was going to take her along, but she jumped out of the wagon. I thought the best thing was to drown her. Still, I felt sorry to drown her. She seemed glad to have my company.

I took her to the water with a large stone tied to her neck. I felt her heart beating but she made no resisting. I consigned her to her watery grave.

The fence was blowing down, so I repaired the same. Gathered up the lumber. Put it upon the low side. Nailed up boards against the windows and commenced to keep bachelors. It seems lonely. I have worked this week for the public, 5 hours.

Sun. 16th -- I am now sitting upon the floor, my back against the wall, the windows boarded up. My blanket lying upon the floor and writing my history of the past.

May 18 -- This day I have paid two dollars and ninety two cents to Br. Kane who attends to the immigration affairs in the general tithing office, for Catherine Tarn, my second wife, immigration to this place and got the permit.

Sat. 22 -- Worked this week at the Public, 57 hours. Still making boxes. Nails are hard to get. Pulling all down for go to get lumber and old nails. Reported that Snider's Saw Mill is burned down by the Indians. I still live alone, the immigration still continuing south. A guard all around the city. Most of the family south - houses with the windows boarded up. The look is solitary. To all appearances, there is plenty of fruit.

Sun. 23 -- I am at home all day -- washed the floor and washed my body. Washed one shirt and one pair of garments.

May 26 -- This night Br. J. V. Long and Br. I. Hackings witnessed in the heavens, a sword pointing to the east. The hilt was beautiful workmanship. They perceived a circle round the moon and, in that circle, the sword with the point east and the hilt west.

Mond. 24th -- This night I sold my wagon bed for twelve dollars to Wm Reid. Paid in labour at the office. I have his note to Br. Simmons to be credited to me.

Tues. 25th -- At four o'clock P.M., we, the carpenters in the Public Shop, commended piece work or by the job, making boxes. A box, five feet long, three feet high, three feet one inch wide, for four dollars, not planed. Small box, three feet four inches long, two feet wide, twenty two inches high, for one dollar and fifty cents.

May 29th -- I have made 3 large boxes at four dollars each, three small boxes at one dollar and fifty cents each and twenty-six and a half hours at 25 cents per hour. This city looks very desolate during this week. Yesterday, I sent about fifteen pounds of beef to my family by Br. Beck to Lehi. I received a letter from my family. All well.

Sun. 30 -- Brigham Young, our President and Governor, is in town. I went to the Tabernacle and found many waiting for entrance - disappointed as the preaching is at an end in this city at present.

Mon. 31 -- Made four flour boxes at one dollar and fifty cents each.

Tues. June 1, 1858 -- Made one large box at four dollars each and three hours time at 25 cents per hour.

Wed. 2, June -- Made three small boxes at \$1.50.

Thurs. -- A large box.

Fri. -- One large box.

Sat. 5th -- Made one large box - got my half lot planted, corn and potatoes, and went to Lehi in company with George and Joseph Romeny. Found my family all well.

Sun. 6 -- Returned back to the city again.

Fri. 11 -- This day the authorities of the Kingdom and the delegates sent by President Buchannon are met in conference to try to settle. War is possible.

Sat. 12 -- Conference is ended and peace is proclaimed. This week I have made four large boxes and three small ones and eight hours time.

Sun. 13 -- Irrigated my lot.

Mon. 14th -- The box-making is over and this day I have been boarding up windows. Quite a change. Sent my tools to Provo. The authorities are clearing out the women and children and sending them south. There is not a woman nor child to be left in the county of Great Salt Lake. This city looks well for plenty of fruit, but the houses are deserted, windows nailed up makes it look lonesome.

Tues. 15th -- This day we have finished work. Worked 16 hours for the Public.

Wed. 16th -- Left Salt Lake City and came to Lehi to my family. Very tired.

Sun. 20th -- I attended meeting in this place. At the close of the same, I told this Bishop that I wanted to know how many of the brethren there was in this place that belonged to Major Maurty's battalion and to have them report to me at the close of the meeting. Three reported.

Mon. 21 -- This day, I and G. Romeny, J. Romeny, P.M. Romeny, P. Gourly, J. Woodruff went to Provo, 18 miles distance. Got 20 dollars paper money at the Public Office.

Started from Provo about seven P.M. Got home about half past twelve. Very tired. When I got into bed, I shook just like the Auga.

Tues. 22nd -- About one o'clock P.M., I started off again for Provo with my buffalo robe and quilt, two loafs of bread, a dinner bucket and a hatchet upon my shoulder. I felt very unfit for the same. I got there, but very tired.

Wed. 23rd -- Started to work repacking flour that the rain damaged.

Sat. 26th -- I worked 33 hours. Returned home, sick, sore throat.

Sun. 27th -- Very sick. This night, about 10 o'clock, the gatherine in my throat bursted and I got ease.

July 2, 1858 -- I went to Provo and brought my bedding and came back. This same day, the road is lined with wagons returning back north. The first presidency, and a few others, left Provo at 5 P.M. of June 30th, 1858. All who wish to return are at liberty to do so. This is from the Deseret News.

July 5th -- Monday. I hired two horse teams and removed my family and effects from Lehi to Great Salt Lake City. Paid \$12.00 for the same to Bishop Evans. It was very disagreeable traveling, clouds of dust, the road crowded. This day, I am 43 years of age.

July 7, 8 and 9 -- I have been trying to buy a syth to cut hay, but failed. The gentiles stores that have come with the soldiers, won't take our paper money.

July 10th -- I borrowed a sythe and went into the Fifth Ward pasture and cut crazy grass.

Mon. 12th -- This morning I asked Bishop T. Winter for the privilege of cutting hay in the calf pasture. He said that I could if I let him one half after cut. This I considered not right. I told him that he was selling other people property and I could prove it. He had sold the hay out of the cow pasture to Br. Cundy for Cundy to cut his barley. These two pastures belong to the people of the Ward, as well as the Bishop.

Tue. 15th -- Fenced the best, all cut.

Wed. 16th -- Hauled the hay home - about two tons - paid the one-sixth for the use of the cattle and wagon.

Thurs. 15th - Fri. 16th -- Cutting water ditches.

Sat. 17th -- Irrigated by half lot. It lies high. Took all day to water same.

Sun. 18th -- Rested

Mon. 19th -- Commenced fence round my place. Finished on Wed. night the 21st.

Thurs. 22nd -- I went up town to see after my tools but they are still at Provo yet. I have made up to this time, as near as I can calculate \$339.12. I worked for some time for the Public and I don't know whether it is given into the office, being that I left before the time was given in for Fort Bridger. I left Great Salt Lake City on the 1st of August and got to Fort Bridger on the 7th of August. I, and Br. Joseph Romeny, commenced to build a store for Livingston and Kinkade. We returned safe home and I have payed my cash tithing upon the money that I made at Fort Bridger and since I have come home to the tithing office and have a receipt for \$36.75.

From July 30th to December 16th -- During this time I was at Bridger three months. Five soldiers was drummed out of the United States' service as soldiers for stealing. There is about five hundred troops. I did not like to stop in their midst for they are wicked and corrupt.

This Fort Bridger, which belonged to the Latter Day Saints, is now the reserve for the United States Army to watch the movements of this territory. I have been at work at Camp Floyd for twelve

days and three weeks at Hot Springs' Brewery. I have not kept my history since July 14th up to this time. I did not take my book with me fearing that I might lose it, but mean to write what I saw at Bridger if I feel like it.

I have paid \$68.75 tithing in all this year.

Hannah Knox born on 9th of November 1868 - blessed by me.

Eleanor Knox born on the 25th of May 1866 - blessed July 29th by me.

Peter William Knox, son of William Knox and Cathrine Tarn, born May 15, 1862 and blessed by Bishop Hickenlooper, June 1, 1862

Peter W. blessed July 29 - 1866 by me.

Jan. 1, 1859 -- Sunday, Jan. 2nd -- This day, for the first

time, the Tabernacle is open for preaching since the general

move took place. Orson Pratt, one of the twelve Apostles, preached. His subject was the Book of Mormon. He took for his text and read to the congregation the witness of said book. The organ is now in the center of the Tabernacle and a division down in the middle of the house to separate the males from the females.

Mond. 3rd -- Worked at the public all this week.

Sat. 8th -- Work is finished at the Public at present, for me.

Tues. 11 -- This morning, Wm. Calder came for me to go and work for his brother, David Calder. It is very corse and cold so that I could not work out doors.

Sat. 15th -- I went to work and it snowed and I had to quit. I worked six hours this week for D. Calder.

Sun. 16th -- This is a fine day.

Sat. 22nd -- This week has been very cold. I have worked six days for C. Calder.

Sun. 23 -- Attended Tabernacle. O. Pratt preached. Me and my wives attended the ward meeting.

Wed. 26th -- Quit work at one o'clock P.M. for snow. Worked two days and a half this week. Very corse.

Thurs. 27th -- This day has been a disagreeable day for me. My wife, Elisabeth, and my wife, Catherin, quarrelled about the children. I could not pacify them. I called upon the Bishop and one of his counselors. My house is in bad order at this time. The devil is trying my wives. At this time, the weather is still corse and cold.

Sun. 30th -- This day I am striving against the powers of darkness to overcome the evil.

Mond. 31 -- Worked ten hours for C.O. Calder.

Tues. Feb. 1, 1859 -- Worked 9 hours.

Wed. 2nd -- Worked $9\frac{1}{2}$ hours.

Thurs. 3rd -- Worked 9 hours this day. I am full of sorrow because of my family. My wives are given away to evil, but I have sought the Lord with my whole heart to give them wisdom and his spirit to resist the powers of darkness and again have peace. Yes, I did cry and wept before the Lord in their behalf that the Lord did hear my prayers and did restore peace in my family once more.

Fri. 4th -- Worked $9\frac{1}{2}$ hours. I am again enjoying peace in my family - myself and wives attending to secret prayers.

Sat. 5th -- Worked 10 hours. Worked this week 57 hours in all.

Sun. 6th -- At home. We attended the ward meeting. I spoke and felt good. It commenced to rain about 3 o'clock P.M.

Mon. 7th. -- Rain all night. At home. All day, rain.

Tue. 8th -- Worked $7\frac{1}{2}$ hours.

Wed. -- Worked 10 hours.

Thurs. -- Snow. I am again full of sorrow because of my family.

Fri. -- There again is peace in my family.

Sat. 12th -- Worked this week, $17\frac{1}{2}$ hours in all. I see the necessity of praying. Yes, of pouring out my heart's desires unto my God, against the powers of darkness. Yes, I call upon the Lord wherever I go.

Sun. 13th -- This morning, my wife again stirred up strife and threatened to leave me. I talked to her and told her that she could do just as she felt for I had done the best that I could. I went out with the cattle and in the fields and there poured out my prayers unto the Lord to have mercy upon me and to forgive me and to put a better spirit into my family, my wives.

The Lord heard my prayers and peace was restored. In this I feel thankful to my Heavenly Father in answering my prayers. This is a time that the Devil is trying to enter division in families. I attended my quorum meeting, the eighth quorum of Seventies. I was the first that spoke and I felt good - likewise, closed by prayer. Came home and found my family in good spirits. Continued to snow.

Mon. -- Still snowing. I am at home reading the Book of Mormon. Finished reading the Book of Mormon. I am now reading the History of Joseph Smith. Snowed all day, very fast.

Fri. -- Still reading at home.

Sat. -- No work this week, too cold and corse.

Sun. 20th -- Fine day and I and my wife, Cathrine, went to the Tabernacle. After the same, I attended the Seventies Hall. Got about half past ten P.M.

Mon. -- Worked 9 hours for D.C. Calder.

Tues. -- Worked $8\frac{1}{2}$ hours.

Wed. -- Worked $9\frac{1}{2}$ hours.

Thurs. -- I went to work but I felt sick and came home and it commenced to snow very fast.

Sat. -- Snow. Very corse. Worked this week in all 27 hours.

Sun. 27th -- I and my wife, Elisabeth, attended the Tabernacle. After the same, I and my wives, Elisabeth and Catherine, attended Ward Meeting.

Mon. -- This day is very corse, snows heavy.

Tues., Mar. 1, 1859 -- This day is fine. I have cleared the snow off the house top; likewise, shoveled from the house after the same. Made a box to sow tomato seed to plant out in the lot when it is warm.

Thurs. -- This is Fast Day. We attended the Fast Meeting in the afternoon. My wives sowed tomato seeds in boxes to stand in the window.. cabbage seed.

Fri. -- I went to work, but it was so cold that we quit and then a terrible storm came -- wind and snow.

Sat. 5th -- Still very cold and snow pretty deep. No work this week. Work is very dull at this time.

Sun. 6th -- This day is clear and fine, but a little frosty.

Mon -- This day I am full of trouble -- my wives full of the bad spirit. I brought the bishop, counselors and teachers to try to banish the bad spirit. My wife, Elisabeth, repented but my wife, Catherine was stubborn. I feel to sorrow over my family for giving away to the evil spirit for truly this is trying time.

Tues. -- This day I felt sick, sorrow had overcome me. I went to Bro. Ameson Fielden and got hands laid on me. I got some better. This is a very corse day.

Wed. -- This day I went in search to try to buy some straw to feed my cattle, but got none. Everybody is almost out of feed, the winter so long. Here it is March the 9th, snow and frost all the time.

Thurs. -- Still frosty and snow about six inches. No feed for cattle. The teachers visited my house. Br. Dumble and Br. Plate, and reasoned with my wives.

Fri. -- This is a corse night, blows and snows.

Sat. 12th -- This night I got my wives to sleep together to try to get them united. This day I attended the Seventies Hall and heard good instructions.

Sun. 13th -- This morning early, I took my cow and heifer to the range to get something to eat. When I got to the place, I took my hat and laid it upon the snow and knelt down upon the same and prayed and the Lord did hear my prayers. When I came home, I found a better spirit in my house. I and my wife, Cathrine, attended the Tabernacle. After dinner, I attended quorum meeting. Still frosty.

Mon. -- I worked this day 10 hours for D.C. Calder. Made a leach to put ashes into to soften the water.

Tues. -- Worked a hour for the above.

Wed. -- At home. Nothing to do at carpenter work. I carried some manure on the lot -- the snow still on the ground.

Thurs. -- I bought 190 pounds of flour from the tithing office.

Fri. -- This is a very fine day - warm.

Sat. -- This is a very corse day. I believe the corsest that has been this winter. Snowing and drifting and cold. It cleared off at night.

Sun. 20th. -- I am at home. The cellar got full of water. Therefore, we had to take out our seed-potatoes to preserve them.

Tues. -- This morning, about five o'clock, Br. Andrew Cowen, Capt. of Fifty, and Robert Davidson, Adjutant, called me up to notify my ten that I am captain over, to find out if they were armed - equipped according to the law of the United States as a militia to be in readiness for any emergency. This day is very corse from the north. This is a very corse winter - no feed for the cattle, no work for the men. The soldiers are going contrary to the laws of the United States and the officers and men are trying their best to a collision with this people.

Sat. 26th -- No work this week.

Tues. 22nd -- This night I signed a petition to be sent to Governor Cummings of this said Territory of Utah, to remove the soldiers from Provo, and from every thickly settled place in Utah, for they are encroching upon our rights and that the court at Provo is illegal. We only want our rights.

Sun. 27th -- This is a corse morning - snowing. I am at home. After dinner I attended quorum meeting.

Mon. -- Snowing all day.

Tues. -- Still corse.

Wed. -- Still corse.

Thurs. -- Cold

April 1, 1859 -- Still cold. The snow lied a little finer.

Sat. -- This day I gave in my time and settled with D.O. Calder - Fifty one dollars.

Sun. 3 -- The snow is going away, but slow. I and my wives attended the ward meeting.

Mon. -- This day I have started to work at the public works, George Romeny boss, putting up a porch at D.C. Calders. This has been a fine day.

Wed. -- This day, I and my wife, Catherine, attended conference.

Thurs. -- I and my wife, Elisabeth, attended conference

Sat. -- This has been a very disagreeable day, rain storm. I was walking along the scaffold and it came down on me. I hurt my leg. Have worked 40 hours for the Public.

Sun. 10th -- The ground is covered with snow. I am at home this day. The snow has melted but showery all day.

Wed. -- My cow has a calf, a bull calf. (5th of April)

Mon. 11th -- Snowing

Tues. 12 -- Snowing very heavy, six inches and cold.

Wed. 13 -- Fair weather. Snow still lies.

Thurs. 14 -- Snow melting

Fri. 15 -- Spring weather.

Sat. -- Commenced to plant the lot. Warm weather. Worked this week at the Public 48½ hours.

Sun. 17th -- Fine morning. I and my wife, Elisabeth, attended the Tabernacle. One Apostle preached the necessity of receiving the Gospel and spirit of it.

Wed. 20 -- Commenced to work for Esra Benson.

Fri. 22 -- Worked three days for E.T. Benson.

Sat. 23 -- Worked 30 hours for the Public.

April 28 -- Bought a cow and calf from the Public for forty dollars.

Sat. 30 -- This morning I commenced to get ready to go to Black Rock to get the Timely Gull afloat. I have worked 41 hours for the Public. I got Joseph Romeny to go with me in the dark about nine o'clock. It rained all the way. Got there about 4 o'clock in the morning - wet through. Got aboard - no shelter - very disagreeable. Cleared up and our clothes dried upon us. We bailed the water out of her and got her afloat.

Mon. 2 May -- Got the water for drinking aboard and get ready to start across the Salt Lake.

Tues. -- About sun-down Bryne Stringham came with five men. Took the anchor on board and started rowing with temporary oars. Hard job to get across. There was a fire kept up all night on gars island to steer to. We got to our port about daylight and anchored on Wednesday the 4th of May.

Thurs. -- Rained all night. Had no shelter - wet through - bedding and all. Cleared up at night we took two wagon covers ashore and made a wickiup and slept on shore.

Sat. 7th -- This night we finished making six oars 18 feet long.

Mon. 9th -- A team came from the city to us with some lumber to build up the cabin.

Tues. -- Joseph commenced with the cabin and I commenced to caulk the decks.

Wed. -- Finished caulking.

Thurs. -- Boiled the pitch kettle and pieced the work.

Sat. 14th -- Br. Stringham came with some more to take the vessels around the island. We started but the wind came from the west and we turned to go around the east side. It blowed a hurricane and drove us ashore and the water left us.

Sun. 15th -- Left here and started for the city. Got home.

Mon. -- This day I rested.

Tue. -- Making roelocks.

Wed. -- At home.

Sat. 21 -- During this week, I have made six roelocks, four cars and part of a main hatch. I have worked for the Timely Gull and the Mud Hen 17 days.

Sun. 22 -- My family is not broke up

Sat. 28 -- This week has passed away and my family all peaceable. Weather fine. Working at the Public - 60 hours.

Sun. 30 -- I, and my wife Cathrine, attended Tabernack. Judge Snow preached and President Brigham Young finished. I rested at home this afternoon.

Wed. 1st -- I bought a young sow, just four weeks old, from the tithing office.

Thurs. 2nd of June, 1859 -- This is a Fast Day. I attended the Fast Meeting.

Sat. 4th -- This day I have made a separation to try to get things in order. I have worked 20 hours for the Public.

Sun. 5th -- I have been all night in my new habitation with my wife, Catherine. I am now writing in the old house.

Wed. 8 -- This day I have worked all day in the calf pasture putting up the fence.

Sat. 11 -- I have worked 50 hours at the Public. This night I have stopped at wife Elisabeths. There is a great deal of the spirit of apostasy amongst the saints. A great many going back.

Sun. 12th -- This day I am at home. Feel a little sick. Thunderings, a shower of rain.

Mon. 13th -- This day I have bought a little pig for three dollars and fifty cents.

Sat. 18th -- This week has been very hot. I have five days for the public.

Sun. 19th -- I, and my wife, Elisabeth, attended the Tabernacle. The Reverent, Mr. Box from Fort Laremy, preached in the forenoon. Heber C. Kimball and Brigham Young followed. The Reverent appeared to be very serious but he did exhibit his foolishness.

Sat. 25 -- This has been a very hot week. A good many immigrants have passed through this Great Salt Lake City to California from Pikes Peak where they have been disappointed in getting gold. A great many are suffering. There were some speculators got up the report of gold and thousands have gone and are suffering and all a hoax. I have worked 6 days at the Public.

Sun. 26th -- I, and my wife, Cathrine, attended Tabernacle this forenoon. Orson Hyde preached that there will be saviors to stand upon Mt. Zion and the necessity to lay up wheat for a famine was at hand.

Sat. 2, July -- I worked this week six days.

Tues. 5 July -- This day I am forty four years of age.

Fri. 8th -- This day rain and thunder.

Sat. 9th -- Rain. I worked four days at the Public.

Sat. 16th -- Worked 59 hours for the Public. Nothing of any importance has taken place during this week to my notice.

Sun. 17th -- This day I am at home resting.

Sat. 23rd -- I have worked 54 hours. Immigrations still passing through this city.

July 24 -- Sunday. At home resting.

July 30. -- Worked for the Public 60 hours. Immigrants is still passing through this Great Salt Lake City. They are selling many useful things to this people very cheap.

Sun. 31 -- I attended the Tabernacle. Brigham and Heber preached. Brigham told us what the Kingdom of God would be when it bare rule that it would be a theocracy government and it would protect everyone in their rights. It mattered not what religion they professed.

All the difference between a republic and the Kingdom of God was that righteous men would rule and the rule of four years, it would be for life if they did right. He said that the people, that did not belong to this Church was seeking to take his life, or his blood.

He said, if they would let us alone, that we would build up the Kingdom of God but, if they would not, we would build up the sooner. He spoke very encouraging. After the Tabernacle, I attended my quorum meeting and, after the same, I attended the ward meeting.

Mon. Aug 1, 1859 -- Seventeen years ago this day I married my wife, Elisabeth. This day I have voted for territorial officers.

Tues. -- I have got three tons of hay from the Public, likewise, a young pig. This day, my wife, Cathrine, has moved back to the old house.

Thurs. -- This is Fast Day and I, and my wives, Elisabeth and Catherine, went to the Tabernacle for the first time that the Fast Meeting has been in that place.

We had not been long in this place. I was reading the news, the meeting not opened. All of a sudden, Br. Hunt was seized by some power. He shouted and looked a strange look and then fell down seemingly in a fit. I thought that the devil it was. I thought perhaps some more would be seized by the same power. The meeting was opened and two more men was knocked down by the same power. Brigham and Heber and some more spoke.

Sat. 6 -- Worked this week 47 hours at the Public.

Sun. 7 -- I and my wives attended the Tabernacle.

Thurs. 11 -- This morning I was making ready to go to work and my wife, Elisabeth, commenced grumbling and finding fault. I tried to reason with her but she was determined to have no reason. I went and asked the council of Br. Brigham. He told me to get another house. This night I have moved my wife, Cathrine and son, John, to the house that I had before. I am full of sorrow.

Fri. -- I am at home sick and full of sorrow. My wife, Elizabeth, seems determined to scatter my family.

Sat. -- Still at home. I am ashamed to go out. I have worked 30 hours for the Public this week.

Sat. 20 -- During this week, merchandise has come into the city and are a coming. Prices are reducing. The Lord is working for this people. This week I have worked 60 hours at the Public.

Sat. 27 -- During this week, goods still arriving and more to come. This city is full of merchandise. I have worked 60 hours for the Public.

Sun. -- This day I am at home. Very tired, being kind of sickly all week.

Sept. 1, 1859 -- Thursday. Fast Day. I am at work this day, but I am sick. The reason that we, the carpenters worked was to prepare a place to receive goods in the President B. Youngs.

Fri. -- I am at home sick.

Sat -- This morning I got T.W. Winter to sell two bull calves and paid him twenty pounds of flour for the same. I am still sick. I have worked 39 hours for the Public.

Sun. -- Still sick. A company of handcarts came into this city this morning, coming in from the states.

Mon. 5 -- I feel some better.

Thurs. -- This morning I went to working hueing steeples for the new Public Shop.

Sat. 10 -- Worked 30 hours for the Public.

Sunday 11 -- Quorum meeting. Attended the Ward Meeting.

Sat. 17 -- Worked this week for the Public 60 hours.

Sun. -- At home all day. Attended the ward meeting.

Sat. 24 -- Worked 30 hours - rained.

Sun -- Went to the Tabernacle.

Sat. 1 Oct. 1859. - Worked 58 hours at the Public.

Sun. -- This morning I branded two calves and a heifer. This is the brand

EW

Br. Thomas J. Smith and wife and child, Br. Robert Maddson, Br. J. T. Wilson, came to see us and got dinner.

Oct. 6 -- Went to Conference. This being Fast Day, the first Thursday of the month. Br. Brigham opened the conference. The Tabernacle was full. He told the congregation that he wanted them to use their privileges and speak their feelings. The congregation did so. Much of the spirit of the Lord was in the meeting. All seemed to enjoy this meeting.

Meeting opened at ten A.M. and adjourned at 3 P.M. until 5 P.M. when Brigham Young gave us some beautiful teachings. He told us the Latter Day Saints was progressing as fast, if not faster, than the people that composed the church in Enoch's days according to the different circumstances that this people have been placed in.

A good meeting. Conference adjourned until tomorrow at ten o'clock.

Oct. 7 -- Met again. Much of the spirit of God enjoyed all day.

Sat. -- Met again. Voted to sustain the authorities of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints. A clear vote. The High Council disorganized excepting John Young. He was still voted to be the president when reorganized.

Brigham said that the wold saying was, "young men for war and old men for council", but he thought "young men for war and young men for council", and he would not fellowship drunkards, nor any other evil person that would not live their religion.

Great attention was paid and, to all appearances, great good would be the result.

Met again but I did not go. I bought a buck saw for one and half dollars so I stayed from the meeting and made a frame for it. Got home and felt sick. Meeting adjourned until tomorrow.

Sun. 9 -- This morning I feel sick but I attended.

Sat. 8 -- I worked for the Public 20 hours at D.O. Calders. My quorum meeting.

Sat. Oct. 15th -- I have worked 60 hours for the Public. I have been sick all week.

Sun. -- At home all day sick.

Sat. 22 -- Worked for the Public 59 hours this week. At 4 o'clock P.M., I got a rusty nail run into my foot. I suffered much pain walking home. It is very pleasant weather. My wives are taking up our potatoes. This year this is a general failure in the potatoe crop. I planted nearly one half lot and taken up about 50 bushels, about half a crop, and we are among the best.

Sun. 23 -- My foot is very sore. At home.

Mon. -- At home.

Tues. -- At home.

Sat. 29 -- At home all week. Foot still bad.

Mon. 14 Nov. -- Worked at the Public 9 hours. My foot is not quite better. Brother Wells told me that he wanted me to go tomorrow and work at the new nail factory, a little above the sugar refinery.

Tues. -- This morning I went out with Bro. A. Hill in a spring wagon. I commenced to frame. About four o'clock P.M. rained, quit work.

Thurs. -- This day, during my absence, my wives sent three of our cattle to Rush Valley to be herded. One cent per day each, two heifers and one steer.

Sat. 19th -- Got home and found all right at home. Worked at the Nail Factory 4 days and eight hours.

Sat. 20 -- I attended my quorum meeting.

Mon. 21 -- Went to the Nail factory. Could not work - too stormy.

Tue. 22 -- Came home.

Sat. 26 -- No work this week. Corse with snow.

Sun. 27 -- This day I killed a young steer. He was a dieing.

Mon. 28 -- This morning I went to the Nail Factory. A very corse dull day.

Tue. 29 -- Still Dull.

Wed. 30 -- Snow and rain. Could not work.

Thurs. 1 Dec., 1859 -- Fine weather.

Fri. 2nd -- Fine weather. Got two quarters of beef from the Public.

Sat. 3rd -- Fine weather. Worked five days. Came home and found all well.

Sun. 4th -- This morning stormy, wind north, drifting and snowing.

Mon. 5th -- Very frosty.

Tue. 6th -- Severest frost that has been in this valley since it was peopled by the white man. This morning the weather clerk, W.W. Phillips, informed us that the thermometer was 22 degrees below zero at daylight with a barometrical range of 26.250 inches. This is, by 5 or 6 degrees, the coldest weather known in Great Salt Lake City and valley since the first settlement.

Sat. 10 -- No work this week.

Sun. 11 -- I went to the Tabernacle. O. Pratt preached. The Sacrament was administered.

Sat. 17 -- No work this week. Corse weather.

Sun. 18 -- Attended my quorum. Very cold.

Mon. 19th -- Started for the Nail Factory.

Thurs. 22 -- This morning my dog Tweed pupped eight pups.

Fri. 23 -- Worked $4\frac{1}{2}$ days. Returned safe home. I stopped at this Nail Factory and board when I can work. This day I took the Mountaineer.

Sun. 25 -- Christmas Day. I and my wife, Catherine, attended Tabernacle.

Mon. 26 -- At home. Br. Ames Fielden killed me a pig. It is about fifty pounds weight. I payed him 12 pounds of flour for his labor.

Tues. 27 -- Started for the Nail Factory.

Sat. 30 -- Returned home. Found all well. Worked $4\frac{1}{2}$ days. I have worked during this year, 1859, in all, \$444 dollars. My tithing is \$44.40.

Jan. 1, 1860 -- Sunday. I am sick.

Mon. 2 -- Went to work at the Nail Factory.

Tue. 3rd -- Worked half a day. Sick this forenoon.

Sat. 7th -- Worked this week five days and a half. Returned home. Found all well.

Sun. 8 -- At home all day. I attended the ward meeting. Br. Hardy preached. He resides at Spanish Fork. Sister Senea was suspended for one month for non-attendance and, after the month, to be cut off if she did not attend. At this moment, I felt disgusted with the harsh treatment that was delt out to a woman that was at the meeting the night previous. Besides, this, the woman, is heavy in the family way and sickly. I would have opposed the motion but it was done so quick that I had not the opportunity.

At a Bishop's Meeting it was told to the Bishops of the several wards to cut off the wicked from the Church and that some of the Bishops was afraid to do their duty. There has been a great amount of wickedness committed amongst the Saints since the soldiers and the states officials was sent into Utah.

Many temptations has been laid before the saints to cause them to fall and stumble. The authorities of the Church are striving to stimulate the saints to keep the commandments of the Lord and live their religion. This is all right, and I believe it is necessary, but the above case I believe wicked.

Bishop T.W. Winter said that the authorities said that the Bishops was afraid to cut off the dead members but he said that he was not afraid so I came to this conclusion after I had witnessed Sister Senea suspended for one month, and a good woman at that, and not able to attend the meetings after six o'clock P.M., cold and snow, that he did this to show that he was not afraid. It is a true saying that, when that kind of men rule, the people mourn.

Mon. 9 Jan. -- I went to the Nail Factory but did not work. So much snow this week. It has been very cold.

Sat. 14 -- Worked this week $4\frac{1}{2}$ days.

Sun. 15 -- This night I, and my wives, Elisabeth and Catherine, attended the ward meeting. The Bishop, T.W. Winter, said that he wanted the Saints to confess their faults. He said that it was a noble spirit that could do it. I thought that it was a good chance for me for I had felt grieved all week at the last Sunday night's proceedings.

I did so but the room of him calling me a noble spirit, he said that Bro. Knox was a mean man and used very abusive language. He said something like this, that his wives was mean women to stop with him and so on.

I did not like this kind of treatment but I said nothing for I thought that I would try the case before the High Council. He called a vote of the saints to forgive me. It was carried, but I did not forgive him. After the meeting, the Bishop and Counselors and teachers went to Sister Senea for they were ashamed of the last Sunday night's proceedings, and restored Sister Senea.

Mon. 16th -- I went to the Nail Factory. Worked $\frac{1}{2}$ day.

Tues. 17 -- Returned home. I made some inquiries concerning what the Bishop said in regard to me. I understand that there is a law in this territory that I could fine him and imprison him, likewise, for what he said, if I can get witnesses to prove the same. I have tried to get witnesses, but failed, for they that I asked said they paid no attention to what he said, but that they felt grieved at him.

Thurs. 19 -- I went to the Nail Factory, worked $\frac{1}{2}$ day.

Fri. 20th -- Worked $\frac{3}{4}$ day.

Sat. 21 -- Worked 1 day. Worked this week, in all $2 \frac{3}{4}$ days.

Sun. 22 -- Attended the Tabernacle. After the same, attended the Ward Meeting. After the minutes was read, I stood up and asked the congregation if any of them could recite the words that Bishop Winter said last Sunday night -- no answer. They were either afraid or had forgot, for I intended to bring him before the High Council. I let it pass off and bore my testimony to the truth of the Gospel.

Mon. 23 -- I went to the Nail Factory and worked $5 \frac{3}{4}$ days. Returned safe home and found all well.

Sun. 29 -- This Day I attended my quorum meeting.

Mon. 30th -- I went to the Nail Factory. Worked all week 4 days and returned home on Sat. night. Found all well. The Deseret News has the following - an evil omen.

A correspondent of the New York Express says that on Friday, while discord and confusion prevailed upon the floor of the House and threats of disunion were freely uttered and seeds of disension were unsparingly sown, he stepped out and, as his eyes turned upward to look upon the stars and stripes that are always floated over both the Senate and the House when in session, he discovered that the House Flag was went from end to end and that the two parts, into which it was severed, were flying on the breeze altogether independent and irrespective of each other.

Sun. 5 -- Monday the 6th. Went to work.

Thurs. 9th -- This day, while at work, I was putting a cap piece upon the bulk head, about 22 feet from the ground. I was upon the top of it, knocking it down with a big hammer. It half turned off the tenent. I threw the hammer from me and was just going to fall down. Bro. William Cahoon, he being a little below me, clinched my legs and saved me.

Sat. 11 -- I have worked this week at the Nail Factory 4 days and returned home and found all well.

Sunday 12th -- I attended the Tabernacle. Likewise, my quorum meeting.

Mon. 13 -- This morning I went to the Nail Factory. Worked five days and three quarters. Returned home on Sat. night, the 18th of February.

Mon. 20 -- This morning I went to the Nail Factory.

Sat. 25 -- Worked 4 days during this week. We, the hands, have come to this determination - to quit work if we did not get better food or better boarding.

Sun. 26 -- This night E. Snow, one of the Twelve Apostles, preached to us in this Fifth Ward. He said that he would like to hear and know the spirit of the people in the ward. I stood up and told the story that we, as a ward, was not united. I asked if it was our right, when we as a ward was called upon to vote, to vote as we felt, either for or against, without being in danger of our standing when we are called upon to vote the Bishop's doctrine is, if we don't vote the way that he wants us, he will cut us off from the Church.

I believe that, when we are called upon to vote, that it is right to use our own reason. I told that a great many have left this Ward and, if the same continued, the Bishop would get the ward to himself.

For this last four years, I have been under the lash. I feeling to stand up and defend my rights.

Br. Snow told us that it was our rights to vote just as we felt and the Lord had seen fit to send merciful men to balance the scales for when they that presided had no mercy, but exercised justice, it was necessary that Bro. Knox and others should be on the merciful side, and said he, "God blesses the merciful.

The Bishop's course, that he had taken in regard to Sister Senea, was too severe. A vote, as put in regard to Br. Wm. Anderson standing for going with me to Sister Senea. The vote was carried in favor of Br. Wm. Anderson, twice the Bishop lost this vote. It was put by Br. E. Snow. The Bishop got three votes to suspend Br. Wm Anderson. Br. Anderson got the whole of the Ward to sustain him in his standing. Br. Snow gave us good teaching. I felt good in the same.

Mon. 27 -- This morning I went again to work.

Mar. 2, Sat. -- During this week, nothing of any importance has happened. I have worked $5\frac{1}{2}$ days at the Nail Factory.

Sun 3 -- I attended the Tabernacle. Br. Brigham Young preached. Said that some had been finding fault with him. Said that the worst wish that he wished upon them was that they might be compelled to do as they would others to do to them and that he would live to see every knee bow and tongue confess that Jesus is the Christ.

After the same, I and my wives, attended the Ward Meeting. The minutes of last meeting that Br. E. Snow presided over was read, but the Bishop was not satisfied with them. They were laid over for reasons that probably will make itself manifest hereafter.

March. 5 -- Went to work Tuesday morning and worked 5 days at the Nail Factory. Returned home on Saturday night, March 10.

Mar. 11 -- Attended my quorum meeting and ward meeting.

March 12 -- Worked all week at the nail factory - 6 days. Returned home Saturday the 17th of March.

Sun. 18 -- I attended the Ward Meeting. Br. E.T. Benson, one of the Twelve Apostles, preached to us. The minutes of the meeting that Br. E. Snow presided over in this Fifth Ward, was read and accepted.

Br. Benson said that both Bishop and the people was in the wrong. After preaching some good doctrine, he said that he wanted to hear the minds of the people concerning the Bishop. He wanted the people to speak and tell what they had against the Bishop. Br. W. Anderson and myself, brother Platt, Br. A. Feldon, we all told what we had against him. Some more was going to testify against him, but time would not admit. Br. Benson called upon us to forgive him. I did so, for one.

Mon. 19 -- Went to work at the Nail Factory. Worked six days and returned home on Saturday night, March 24, 1860.

Sun. 25 -- I attended the Tabernacle. Br. O. Hyde preached the authority of the Priesthood. Br. Brigham followed. He said that on the 6th of April next, the Church would be thirty years old, organized with six members. The children of Israel traveled forty years in the wilderness and then were prepared to pass over Jordan. He hinted that this people would go to their promised land, Jackson County, when this people had traveled forty years, ten years from this time, or about.

Mon. 26 Mar. Went to the Nail Factory six days and returned safe home. Had a nursing chore and brought it home, Sat. 31 March.

Sun. April 1, 1860 -- At home all day. Attended the Ward Meeting.

Mon. -- Went to the Nail Factory and worked three days and returned home and found all well.

Thurs. 5th -- This day I, and my wife, Elisabeth and daughter, Dorothy, attended the Fast Meeting in the Tabernacle. We had a good meeting.

Apr. 6 -- We attended conference this day. The Church is 30 years old. It is called the birthday of the Church. I felt well. The authorities of the Church spoke with great power and I felt it and rejoiced.

Sat. 7 -- At conference again. Missionaries to be sent to the nations. I enjoy these times very much.

Sun. 8th -- Conference finished. I am at home, but I attended my quorum meetings. We had a good time. Three of our members is amongst the missionaries. It has been rather coarse weather.

Mon. 9 Apr. -- This day, one of my cows calved a bull calf. Her name is "Lady". I have commenced to work at shifting my cow house and pig pen.

Friday the 13th of April, 1860 -- This morning, about half past eight o'clock, my wife, Catherine, was delivered of a female child. Her name is Sarah Ann Knox.

Sat. 14th -- This week I have worked at home all week shifting my fence, taking part of the street in digging.

Sun. 15th -- At home.

Mon. 16th -- This morning I commenced again at the Nail Factory.

Tues. 17th -- This night I got my heifer and first bull calf home from the herd. We have three cows now giving milk.

Thurs. 19 -- I got my half lot plowed. Commenced to plant potatoes. Commenced to rain and rained all night.

Fri. 20 -- This morning, at work, Br. Moss, our boss at work over us carpenters Br. Leabs and Br. O. Brown had been putting a piece of timber into the ground. Br. Brown and Br. Loabe understood Br. Moss to say eleven inches. Br. Moss said that he said thirteen inches. Then a row took place and Br. Loube and Br. Brown left the work.

Sat. 21 -- Worked six days this week. Returned home and found all safe.

Sun. 22

Mon. 23 -- Went to the Nail Factory. Worked all week and returned home on Saturday night, April 26. Brought home a new hay rake. Worked six days.

Sun. 29 -- at home.

Mon. 30 -- Went to the Nail Factory.

Sat 5 May -- Returned home and brought a hay rake that I made. Worked six days and attended a meeting in the Ward School House. Re-elected Br. A. Felden as Water Master.

Sun. 6 May -- At home. Coarse day.

Mon. 7 -- This morning, snowing, about six inches depth. I started for work and started after dinner.

Wed. 9 -- I came home.

Thurs. 10 -- Worked this day on the water ditch and had a few words with Bishop T.W. Winter. Br. A. Felden being water master. At 12 o'clock, he, the water master, told us to quit for dinner. We did so. The Bishop ordered us back to work for he said that he was boss. I told him that I could not serve two masters.

Fri. 11 -- Went to work at the Nail Factory.

Sat. 12 -- This morning, there is about 12 inches of snow and continued until after dinner. Worked this week at the nail factory, four and a half days. Returned home and found all well. The snow is very deep and I gave Br. A. Feldon and T. Seanea some hay for their cattle.

Sun. 13th of May -- Snowing fast.

Mon. 14th -- Snow and frost still upon the ground. I went to work at the Nail Factory. On Wed. Night I dreamed of danger and the dream was fulfilled. I was at work upon the bulk head and I stepped upon a plank and it upset with me. I cached and saved myself. Worked all week and returned home safe and found my family all well.

On Sat. 19th, worked six days.

Sun. 20th -- I attended the Tabernacle and quorum meeting.

Mon. 21 -- I went to work and worked all week at the Nail Factory. Returned home Saturday night, May 26. Worked 6 days. On Monday morning last, May 21st, I put three cows into the Seventh Ward pasture at 25 cents per head. Ames Fieldon pasture keeper.

Sun. 27 -- I attended the Tabernacle.

Mon. 28 -- Went to work at the Nail Factory. Commenced to calk the floor and bulk head.

Thurs. 31st -- Worked 4 days. Came home at night.

Fri. June 1 -- This morning I have commenced to repair two boats.

Sat. at the boats. Worked 2 days.

Sun. 3 June -- At the Tabernacle and quorum meeting.

Mon. 4 -- At work at the boats in the middle of the forenoon. News came that the boats was not needed and quit to work at them. Worked $2\frac{1}{2}$ days in all at the boats. This afternoon, rain.

Tues. 5 June -- Went to the Nail Factory. Worked five days. Returned home Saturday night, June 9 and found all well.

Sun. 10 -- At home all day. Sick Headache.

Mon. 11 -- Went to work at the Nail Factory. Worked six days calking bulkhead.

Sat. 16th -- Returned home and found all well.

Mon. 18th -- Went to work at the nail factory. Worked all week, 6 days. Returned home on Sat. 23 June and found all well.

Sun. 24 -- At home.

June 25 -- Went to work. Worked all week at the Nail Factory. Returned home on Sat. June 30. Worked six days.

Sunday 1 July -- At home. This night I agreed with some of the brethren in the 5th Ward to get up a memorial to try and remove Bishop T.W. Winters from his Bishopric to present it on the 4th of July.

Mon. 2nd -- Went to work at the Nail Factory. While at work, I wrote the following Memorial that was agreed to on Sunday night

Memorial to Brigham Young, President of the Church of
Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints.

Beloved President:

We, your Brethren and fellow laborers in the Kingdom of God, after much long suffering and patient forbearance, arising from the meddlesome offensive and unchristianlike conduct and policy of T.W. Winters, Bishop of the Fifth Ward of this City, humbly pray for his removal and the appointment of some person whom your petitioners can sustain, and we pledge ourselves to sustain any good, honorable man. In token whereof, we heartly subjoin our names.

Wm Knox, D. Wineger, H.J. Platt, Wm Anderson, J.
Fairecloth, F. Faircloth, A. Fielding,
N. Jacobsen, A. Cowen, C. Thackery, J. Domeville.
July 4, 1860

This morning I presented this Memorial to Daniel H. Wells, Brigham Young's second counselor. This day I celebrated. I have enjoyed the same.

Thurs. 5th -- This day I am forty five years of age.

Sat. 7th -- Worked this week five days at the Nail Factory.

Sun. 8th -- Watering my half lot.

Monday 9th -- At work at the Nail Factory. President Brigham Young, D.H. Wells, present. I asked Br. Brigham Young about the Memorial and he told me that T.W. Winters was dismissed from his office and Bishop Hickenlooper of the Sixth Ward was appointed to act as Bishop.

Sat. the 14th -- Returned home and found all well. Worked 6 days at the Nail Factory. Bishop Hickenlooper called a meeting for the people of the Fifth Ward to do up business. I proposed Bro. A. Cown, A. Fielden, H. J. Platt for new school trustees. Carried.

Sun. 15th -- The people of the Fifth Ward met in the Six Ward School House. The people of the Sixth Ward will come to the Fifth Ward in turn.

Mon. 16th -- Went to the Nail Factory. Worked all week and returned home.

Sat. 21 July -- Worked six days.

July 24th -- This night we had a dancing party in the Fifth Ward School House. Came off good. Worked five days.

Wed. Aug. 1, 1860 -- Returned home to attend Fast Meeting.

Thurs. 2nd -- Attending Fast Meeting.

Sat. 4th -- Worked $4\frac{1}{2}$ days at the Nail Factory.

Sat. 11th -- Worked all week at the Nail Factory - 6 days. Returned home and I am called to act as teacher in the sixth ward. This night, I and Br. John Page, went and taught and, after the same, attended teacher's meeting in the sixth ward.

Sun. 12 -- At home all day with sore toe.

Mon. 13 -- Went to work.

Sat. Aug. 18 -- Worked six days at the Nail Factory. Returned safe home and found all well.

Aug. 26 -- Worked six days at the Nail Factory.

Sun. 27 -- I attended the Bowery all day. In the morning, watering all the place to lay the dust and drawing water for the sacrament. In the afternoon, I attended in assisting the administering of the Sacrament in the bowery.

Sat. Sept. 1st -- Worked $5\frac{1}{2}$ days at the Nail Factory. After the same, I went a visiting in the Sixth Ward.

Sept. 8, Sat -- Worked $5 \frac{3}{4}$ days at the Nail Factory. I attended teacher's meeting.

Sun. 9th -- Went a teaching again.

Mon. 10th -- Went to the Nail Factory. Worked one and a half days for the Nail Factory.

Tue. 11th -- At 12 o'clock, dinner time, I was sent to Little Cottonwood Canyon to build a house for a blacksmith shop for the quorum that is getting out stone for the Temple. Worked $4 \frac{1}{2}$ days and returned home Saturday the 15th.

Sun. 16th -- I attended the bowery. President Brigham Young preached and told the congregation that some of the Elders, that was going on missions, have returned home merchants. He wanted those Elders that is about to go to the nations, to preach the Gospel, to gather the poor and not beg, but to live their religion and God would provide for them.

He told the Bishops to take up collections in the different wards for the care of the poor Elders and gather home the poor saints. I gave one good cow worth forty dollars, two steer calves worth about fifteen dollars and one dollar in gold.

Mon. 17 Sept. -- Went again to Little Cottonwood to work. Worked all week, six days, and returned home on Sat. Sept 23. This day the cow and calves was taken away.

(It is a little hard to understand that Wm Knox could have been writing in his diary on the 17th and state that he had worked until the 23rd. He does this several times. I leave it up to the reader to figure out how he did this.

D. Bryson)

Sun. 24 -- This day I went teaching.

Mon. -- I again went to Cottonwood and worked all week.

Sat. Sept 29 -- Worked six days and walked home, 16 miles. At night attended a teacher's meeting. Br. Watson was suspended for taking up a cow and calf which he considered was lost by an imigrant. I and my partner visited him twice as a teacher and told him that all strays, that was found, belonged to the stray pound.

Sun. 30th -- I and my partner visited our portion of the Ward.

Mon. Oct 1, 1860 -- Went to Little Cottonwood and worked three days and returned home on the 4th of October, Thursday, and visited the Fair.

Oct. 6 -- I and my wife, Elisabeth, attended conference.

Mon. 8th -- Conference finished.

Tues. 19th -- Went to work at Cottonwood. Worked 5 days and returned home, Sat. Oct 13

Mon. 15th -- Went to Little Cottonwood. Worked 6 days.

Sun. 28th -- Stopped at Little Cottonwood.

Mon. 22nd, Tuesday the 23rd, Wed. the 24th -- Started for home. Worked this day 3 days and finished.

Fri. 26th -- Started again at the nail factory.

Sun. 28th -- At night commenced to rain.

Mon. 29th -- The first snow in this valley. Snowing fast.

Nov. 1, 1860 -- This morning I went to the Nail Factory. Worked 3/4 days and returned home on Saturday night the 3rd of Nov.

Nov. 4 -- At home all day.

Mon. 5th -- Went to the Nail Factory and worked 5 days and returned home on Sat. Nov. 10.

Nov. 12th -- This morning I went to the Nail Factory and worked on Br. Hart's House in the afternoon. Stormed and snowed. It has been a corse week. Returned on Sat. morning Nov. 17. Worked five days.

Sun. 18th -- This fornoon I and Br. J. Page spent in teaching and found the people about right.

Sat. 24th -- Worked 6 days.

Mon. 26th -- I again went to the Nail Factory. Worked all week and returned home on Sat. 1 Dec. 1860. Worked six days. Br. Hart asked me to fram and house thirty feet by twenty five to join on to the Nail Factory. How much I would do it for? I told him that I could give him an answer in a few days. I gave the estimate two hundred and 75 dollars and four cents. I heavy frame 7 posts 14 feet long to be hung 8 inches by 8 two posts 19 feet long, 4 girders 24 feet long, 2 plots 30 ft. long 2" by 8", 8 rafters with cellar bests 24 truesses and board roof, board side and make window frames and doors. I got the job and have taken Br. Robert Sidaway in as partner.

Mon. 3 Dec. -- I went to the Nail Factory but did not work but came to the City and inquired of D.H. Wells to get Br. R. Sidaway to help me.

Tues. 4 Dec. -- D.H. Wells came to the Nail Factory and told me that I could get him. This day I commenced with the job. This is the first.

Wed. 5 Dec. -- Br. Robert Sidaway started with me as a partner in this job.

Sat. 8 Dec. -- I returned home and found all well.

Mon. 10 Dec. -- Started again. We worked all week.

Sat. 15th -- This day we have raised the frame and returned home and found all well.

Sunday 16th -- This day I have put a new seat into the fifth ward school house, 12 feet long, worth \$15.00

Dec. 25th -- This night we have had a dancing party in the fifth Ward School room. It came off first rate until Br. E. Rusting, one of the Bishop's counselors got up and said that we did not dance by the spirit of the Lord. I felt disgusted and left and many followed. Another dance and broke up. There was the best of order all night and was then. I and my wife, Catherine, was in this dance and I did not understand the figures -- neither did my wife, but we was doing our best. Br. Rusting's remarks was not in season.

Dec. 26 -- This morning I counted up my work for this last year up to December 1, 1860. I cannot reason no further on account of having my other work by the Job. I have worked for \$629.35. My tithing is \$63.00 and 85 cents.

Dec. 31 -- My family and myself attended a dancing party in the Fifth Ward school house -- the old year out and the new year in. In all, good feelings.

January 1, 1861 -- Very cold weather.

Jan. 6th -- This morning Br. J. Page and myself assisted by three teachers of the sixth ward, settled a defulgity between Br. J. Anderson and Br. Buttel.

Mon. 7th -- Went to the Nail Factory. Br. Robert Sidaway and myself made a flour bin. $2\frac{1}{2}$ days work, the rest of the time at the frame. Returned home on Sat. the 12th.

Feb. 9th, 1861 -- Saturday night. I attended a High Council. The members of said council, not being present, I was nominated one pro-tem, the case was Br. Cheseny and Whetiker. Br. Cheseny was cut off by Bishop Hickenlooper of the Sixth Ward for dishonesty and abuse and, in his trial, he was again cut off for abuse. The trial lasted until 2 o'clock A.M.

Feb. 16th -- We, the people of the Fifth and Sixth Wards, Wednesday at two o'clock P.M., had a dancing party at both wards.

Thurs. -- Commenced again to dance at the same time I, and my wives was at supper at Bishop Hickenloopers and was well entertained. These parties was got up to celebrate the finishing of a bridge across the Jordan River, got up by donations. I gave ten dollars to the same. At a rest recess, or to change the scene a little from dancing, I moved that a vote of thanks be returned to the Bishop and committee of the getting-up of the bridge and, likewise, that the bridge should be named to distinguish it from other bridges. It was carried and the bridge was christened the Union Bridge. This was done in the Fifth Ward School House. The parties went off well.

Sat. March 2nd -- I have worked all week at the Nail Factory. The newspapers from the states is filled with exciting news, one President elected for the North and one President for the South. The whole world seems to be in commotion but Utah, the place of the Saints. Here there is peace.

Sun. 3rd -- I am at home all day. Snowing all day.

March. 9th -- Worked 6 days. Made a coffin on Thursday for Bro. Wilson's child.

Sun. Mar. 10th -- This week I have given 30 dollars to Bishop Hickenlooper for the gathering of the poor saints.

Mon. 11th -- This night, I, in company of eight brethren, dressed in our robes and administered to a child that got burned - Brother Spruce's child.

Tues. 12 March -- This day my half lot is sowing with wheat. I have been at home all week shifting my front fence and framing a back house. Finished on Saturday night. Attended a council meeting. A young man cut-off from this people for stealing from Br. Yenger, a steer. This has been a fine week.

Mar. 18th -- I went to work at the Nail Factory. My wife, Catherine, went with me and helped me to carry some of my tools. This day I left Br. R. Sidaway house and went to Br. William Smoot to board. This week I have worked can't read days. Returned home Saturday, March the 23rd.

Mar. 24 -- This day I am at home. It's wet.

Mon. 24th -- This day I am at home. This morning snows fast. About eight this morning Bride, one of our cows, calved a heifer calf, red and white calf -- name is "Beauty". This afternoon I went to work. Worked this week 5 days and returned home on Saturday night March 30th. This has been a very wet week.

Apr. 6th -- Worked 5 days. Saturday conference 2 days.

Apr. 13 -- Worked 5 days.

Apr. 18, Wed. -- This day, I and Br. J. Finelson, have taken a job of millwright work at the Nail Factory from Daniel H. Wells for 150 dollars. This afternoon my wife, Catherine, came for me to come home to my wife, Elisabeth, for she was in labor. On the 19th of April at about half past twelve o'clock A.M. a son was born. His name is Thomas Knox. I, and my wife, Catherine, all that was present on this occasion. His weight is eight pounds and a half.

April 20 -- This week I have worked 3 days. This day, the teams have made a cart to go to the states to bring the poor saints to this valley. There is every prospect of Civil War in the states. This day, rain.

Sun. 21st -- Rain.

Mon. 22 -- This morning, I have gone to Br. J. Indstroms to board. Worked all week and returned home on Sat. April 27.

Sun. 23 -- At the Tabernacle. Was read an Extra, the Deseret News. Exciting times in the States. Civil War.

May 5th, 1861 -- This night my son, Thomas Knox, got blessed at the Fifth Ward by Bishop Hickenlooper. Edward Rushting mouth.

Mon. May 6th -- This day, I finished my job and made \$62.00 this week. I worked $2\frac{1}{2}$ days.

Sun. 12th -- I attended the Tabernacle.

Mon. I went to work at the Nail Factory. Worked $3\frac{1}{2}$ days. Returned on Thursday home and commenced to put up a board fence

On Sat. 18th of May, 1861 -- Got Brother J. Winegar to help me at \$2.00 per day. I am taking in 11 yards of street land.

Sun. 19th -- This night I was seized with a sore throat. During this week I have suffered much with my throat. On Sunday morning, about half past eight, my throat busted.

Mon. 27th - Some better

Thurs. 3 May -- Finished planting potatoes.

June 27, 1861 -- This morning, I and Br. J. Finelson, commenced on a job that we have taken, framing and milling the work -- to do it for two thousand dollars.

Sat. June 22nd -- I worked six days on this job. This is the first work that I have done since the 18th of May -- last sickness. I and Brother Finelsen have taken this work by the job.

June 29 -- Saturday. I returned home from work and found all right.

July 4, 1861 -- I have enjoyed myself this day in a grand procession. Every trade displayed their banners and at work in wagons. I was at work in a farm house upon a wagon. All the children in the different wards walked. It was grand. At night we had a dance.

July 16th -- My wife, Elisabeth commenced to cut out wheat. The soldiers that came to this place 3 years ago to slay us, all are going to return back to the states to fight, fight among themselves. A Civil War is raging between the north and the south. We are at peace in these valleys of the mountains.

July 24th -- I and my family this afternoon was at a dancing party in the Fifth Ward.

Sat. 27 -- This day the wheat is all cut. One half lot.

Aug. 10

Aug. 25th -- Sunday morning, Br. J. Page, Frederick Cook, Seamer Gibson, Cundie, called upon me to go to the pasture to see it divided up. Lots was cast in my house and I made the papers. Br. J. Page got the west lot, Frederick Cook got the south half lot. Gibson Cundie got the north half lot.

Sept. 6 -- This day I have left Finelson's boarding house for bad treatment and going to J. Hart's.

Sept. 8th -- This day Wm Tarn, my wife, Catherine's father, came to this valley. He brought one yoke of oxen.

Oct. 3 -- This day, rain. I came home and found my wife, Catherine's father, very sick and at 2 o'clock on the 4th of October, 1861 A.M., he died. Apparently to have been worn out. I buried him in the city graveyard about 5 o'clock this same day P.M. He died firm in the faith of the gospel.

On the third, when I came home, he asked me to lay hands upon him. I did so. Br. Fossett Fielding and J. West came and we all administered to him. I was mouth. I felt that he would die. He held the office of teacher.

Br. Knox, that is myself, Br. Fossett, A. Fielding, J. West. Br. Fossett is first counselor to Bishop Hickenlooper, was mouth piece. We ordained him to the office of an Elder. The expense of burial \$16.75. He was, I suppose, 55 years of age.

Oct. 5 -- This day I have got a new stove, Charter Oak #7 from D.H. Wells.

Oct. 12th -- This day we had the water wheel running -- all went well. I returned home. Br. A. Fielding and myself was called to administer to Br. L. Thackney. He was very sick. After the same, I went to the teacher's meeting. Br. J. Pace was my partner in

teaching in the Sixth Ward. I considered it to be wisdom for me to teach in the ward that I lived in. I, and Brother Fielding, are to teach in this Fifth Ward for the time being. There was a general change in the teaching department. Br. Fossett, Bishop Hickenlooper first counselor, was called to get to the south, together with a great many more, to raise cotton, that we in these mountains may have clothing. For all appearances, our supply will soon be cut off from the states for there is nothing but war and more making ready. My wife, Catherine's father that died on the 4th of October last, left us with one yoke of oxen.

Oct. 19, 1861 -- Friday. This day, the telegraph wire is clear through from the states through the Great Salt Lake City. President Brigham Young sent the first communication from this place.

Oct. 20 -- This day I have attended to military duty. Br. George Thackery is my Sgt. in place of H. Wright.

Sun. 26 -- Oct. I have to attend a military meeting.

Oct. 23 -- This day I left Br. J.H. Hart's boarding house for being so meanly treated.

Nov. 2 -- Sat. This day I have been at home tending to military service, drilling. Br. J. Finelson and myself finished our job, our contract. My share of this contract was \$532.68.

Nov. 4th -- Settled up.

Wed. Nov. 6th -- Commenced to work by the day. Worked this week 3 3/4 day.

Nov. 16th -- 5 days. I and Brother Robert Siddoway has taken a house to finish -- roof, floor, doors and window casings.

Dec. 8th -- Sat. This day I came home. This day, having got my right foot, big toe frozen.

Dec. 24th, 1861 -- This day at 2 o'clock all, we the teachers of the Fifth Ward and Sixth Wards, had a sociable party until 12 o'clock. I took to the party, besides my own family, two widows, Sisters Sadons. We enjoyed ourselves.

I have made, this year, more than I ever did in my life. The Lord has blessed me this year, for my liberality when the call was made to visit the brethren, to go to preach the gospel to the nations of the earth. I gave the best cows and two steer calves. My wife, Elisabeth, gave one dollar to assist them on their way. I felt good in doing so. My wife, Catherine, her father came and just lived one month and died, firm in the faith, left us one yoke of oxen, a silver watch and his clothes and they fit me.

I can bear testimony to the truth that they that will do their best and be liberal to help to build up the kingdom of our God willingly, they will not be the losers by doing so. Last year I pretty well made out, but this year I have made more. My wages this year is \$931.50. I have paid my labor tithing, \$98.5 Dec. 26, 1861. We, the teachers, had another party and enjoyed ourselves.

Jan. 1, 1862 -- This day at 2 o'clock P.M. we commenced another party. Finished at 12 o'clock. Came off well.

Jan. 2 -- Fast Day. I attended the Ward meeting. We enjoyed ourselves.

Jan. 3 -- I am at home. Snowing fast.

Feb. 4 -- Tuesday. This day there was a great excitement in this city, caused by a man named John Baptist, the grave digger. Lately, there was three thieves shot and buried. One of their brothers took up one of the corpses to see him. When he opened the lid of the coffin, his brother was naked in the coffin. A search was made to find out and they found that the grave digger had stolen almost every one of their grave cloths. He has been robbing the dead of their grave cloths for 3 years. He is a hellion by notion.

Feb. 3 -- This day I have gone to the Cottonwood quarry to build a frame house for John Sharp, boss of the quarrymen, quarrying rock for the temple.

Feb. 15 -- This day I have finished the frame house and returned home. Worked 18 days making \$54.00.

Feb. 16, 1862 -- This day, about 7 o'clock P.M., my daughter, Dorothy Knox, was married to John Karless in the Fourth Ward in Thomas Karless's house, by Elder John Goodsell of this same ward, great Salt Lake City.

Feb. 23 -- One of my cows calved a heifer calf Sunday.

March 3 -- Snowing fast all day. Mostly, this day is the first general election for the state of Deseret for Governor Brigham Young, for Lt. Governor H.C. Kimball. All seemed anxious to vote. I voted about dinner time. My number was 787 voted before me. Brigham Young, governor, came to vote. The people gave him three cheers. He took off his hat and joined. After, came H.C. Kimball. He got three cheers. He, likewise, took off his hat and hurraed for the State of Deseret.

Mar. 4 -- I started for Cache Valley with Br. Thomas Armstrong with one yoke of oxen and wagon. I was eight days in going to Logan, the headquarters in Cache Valley. Corse weather. Snowing. My errand to this place is to look out for a new location. I stopped mostly at Br. Thomas Davidsons, shoemaker. I like this

valley very well. I have taken 20 acres of land and two city plots. I felt that is time for me to leave Salt Lake City. It is a very expensive place. Besides, this is the council to lay up wheat against the time to come. Now, I consider that if I stay in Salt Lake City, I never will have the chance to lay up wheat.

I left Logan on the 14th of March, Friday. There was from 3 to 4 inches of snow at Logan. I came to Mendon. This is on the west side of the valley about 9 miles from Logan. The snow was about 12 inches deep. I stopped at Brother James Hancocks all night.

Mar. 15 -- I left for great Salt Lake City. On my journey, I met up with Br. Nephi Curtis with a horse team loaded, the roads heavy. We came to his house that was about 36 miles from Mendon, three miles to the south of Box Elder. I stopped all night. He entertained me very kindly. I left on Sunday morning, the 16th of March, and came to Ogden. I stopped all night at Br. Nelson's, the painter.

Mar. 17 -- I left for home about 9 o'clock this morning and got into great Salt Lake City about 9 o'clock P.M. - 40 miles. I have walked from Cache Valley in three days -- about 100 miles.

April 1 -- During this week, I have sold my place, house and half lot and two and half acres of land in the calf pasture for \$430.00 Paid on the church books -- I have got 40 pounds of nails and 48 lights of glass \$12.00, a new hat \$7.50 and a bottle of mustard linament \$1.00 I have got 48 lights of sack \$9.60 and a \$20.00 order. Paid \$11.00 for copper tools, two edge, one cremen knife and one head knife.

This spring has been very corse into a week of April. I ought to have been in Cache Valley for this time, but the roads have been very bad.

Apr. 25 -- This day I went to work at Br. A.C. Pipers, Br. R. Siddoway is with me building a Cemicle Factory, \$3.00 per day.

Apr. 26 -- This day we have got in from the herd, a heifer with a calf, bull, that I sent out 2½ years ago. Her name is Rosey.

May 6 -- This night I got one ox home from the herd. The other one died during the winter. I paid a 4 year old steer for the herd bill. High waters, or floods, are doing much damage.

May 19 -- My old cow, Pide, has calfed, a heifer calf. Great Salt Lake City Ward 5th.

Thursday, May 15th, 1862 -- This morning, about two o'clock A.M., my wife, Cathrine, was delivered of a son. His name is Peter William Knox. My wife, Elisabeth, and I attended the same.

May 17th -- This night, as I was returning home from my 8th quorum meeting, about ten o'clock P.M., one of my cows, Rosey by name, was lieing stretched out, her eyes turned up and her belly swelled to all appearances, poisoned and dieing.

I put my hat upon the fence and laid my hands upon her and prayed over her, just the same as I would have done upon a man or woman. She got ease directly and got upon her feet and staggered like a drunken man. I felt that the power of God has rested upon her, although she was but a cow. I afterwards got Br. A. Fielding and we administered milk and lard, beat together.

May 18 -- This morning the cow was well and went to the herd.

May 19 -- This afternoon I, and Br. Robert Sidaway, commenced to put a roof upon Stephen Taylor's house that was blown off by a whirly wind.

June 1, 1862 -- Fifth Ward School room, Great Salt Lake City. This night, my son, Peter William Knox, was blessed by Bishop Hickenlooper.

June 16 -- This day, Joseph Morris and John Banks was brought to this city, dead. This said, Joseph Morris for some time has been led by the devil. Made him believe that he was the man to lead and bore of the Kingdom of God. He located himself at a place called North Weber. He had revelations and wrote them and set up for himself. Got Bishop Cook and Brother to join him. They began to preach and organize, baptize, and confirm all that felt to join them. John Banks and Bishop Cook were his counselors.

Some hundreds of people flocked to his standard. They had all things common. The devil had great power over them until the very last. After a little over two years, the end came. Joseph Morris and John Banks shot for rebellion against the laws of the United States. The remainder taken prisoners.

There was a great deal to do about them. They were broke up and scattered, degraded, forfeited all their rights to the Kingdom of God. The powers of darkness was great amongst them. This is the end of this false prophet.

July 13 -- This day, I and my family and all my stock -- my family consists of myself, my wife, Elisabeth and her two sons and two daughters, my wife, Cathrine, and her two sons and one daughter, and three cows, one ox, one yearling steer, three young heifers, all left this Great Salt Lake City bound for Logan in Cache County, with James Quale.

We arrived in Logan on July 17th, 1862 and stopped at Brother Davidson's until I could build a house. I have ommitted many things which I might have written, but coming to a new place, this has been stopping me. I have given my big ox for seven sheep, three ewes and four others. I had the sheep in the herd but two weeks and lost one ewe sheep.

July 24 -- We had a good day in Logan celebrating the day that the pioneers came into this valley. I cut my hay, up to the knees in water. Worked for S.M. Bare and Nelson. They did not behave very well to me. I got my house logs from S.M. Bale. I left them and went to work for Thatcher Carpenter Work. Got lumber to finish my house.

The Indians have been very troublesome and the militia has been called out several times. I was chosen to be Captain of the six ten. I held this office while I was in Great Salt Lake City.

President Brigham Young preached two days here. I stood guard all night to guard him. John Taylor, George A. Smith, Lorenzo Snow, of the Twelve were here and some others. We had a good time.

Guard has been kept all night in Logan and throughout Cache County for some time.

My house and ship and two city lots is in the second Ward, Logan. I have not wrote much since I came to this place. I have been called to act in the teacher's quorum and visit, which I do.

January 1, 1863 -- The beginning of corse weather. The fall has been very fine which has been good for me coming to a new place. I have got my cows and sheep made comfortable just before storm and that but one day.

Jan. 2 Corse.

Jan. 3 -- Corse. Snow from the south.

Jan. 4 -- Blowing a whole gale from the south. Rain and snow.

Jan. 6 -- This night I delivered a lecture according to an appointment. My subject was the revelation given to Joseph Smith, the Prophet and revelation on Celestial Marriage.

The Indians that has troubled this Cache Valley, Bare Hunter, the Chief, and most of his tribe, has got killed, at last, by the California volunteers that came to Great Salt Lake City last summer for the purpose to make trouble for the saints, but the Lord has, so far, protected His people.

On Jan. 12, 1863, the fight commenced on, or about, Bear River. The volunteers and the Indians had a big fight. There was from 250 to 300 hundred Indians killed and a number of the soldiers killed and wounded. The Nauvoo Legion has been organized in this place - Logan. I was made Adjutant to Captain Alvin Crockett of the first fifty of the Nauvoo Legion.

May 11 -- For this last six weeks, we have been training twice a week, learning the art of war. The Indians is very hostile killing and stealing. I have been off work this last five weeks, sore hand. This day I am put in water master. This day, a company

of Morrisites and soldiers have passed through Logan to make a new settlement farther north.

January 1, 1864 -- This morning my wife, Catherine Knox, was delivered of a daughter. Her name is Catherine Knox.

In the month of June, I commenced to work at the Benson's and Thatcher's Flour Mill. During the latter part of this summer, I sold ten acres of hay-land and about eight acres of farming-land, not broke up, for two yoke of oxen and a new wagon, including one city lot and a good log house and corral. The reason that I sold out was to get a wagon and team. I have one house and lot yet.

When I first came to see Cache Valley, I came to Logan City. I was promised by Bishop Thomas Preston, if I came to Logan with my family, that he would let me have twenty acres of farming land, hay land, and two city lots. The city lots and the hay land I got, but the twenty acres of farming land, I did not get. Now, this was the reason, the very thing that I wanted, to raise my own bread.

I came to Logan on July 17, 1863, in the spring of 1863. I expected to get my twenty acres but promises with some are like pie crusts. If I had got what was promised, I might, by some means, got my land broke up at that time.

The spring of 1864, I tried my very best to get land for wheat was getting to be very precious. After a great deal of running about, I succeeded in getting about eight acres, but I was too long in getting it, for everyone that had a team seemed so anxious to put in wheat. Besides, there was a scarcity of hay. I failed to get a crop of wheat, so I felt like to leave Logan and try some place else.

I have worked at this mill at \$3.50 per day until the fall and then the wages was four dollars per day. Flour is twelve dollars per hundred pounds.